Workshop 2

Textbooks and Educational Media in the Learning Environment
What do subject teacher students learn about cooperative learning and problem solving in WebCT environments?

Marja-Liisa Julkunen

In Finland, like in so many other countries, one problem in classroom pedagogy has been that even though there have been discussions on pupil centred teaching activities, teacher centred teaching still dominates. The first curriculum for the Finnish comprehensive school was published in 1970 and all schools in Finland entered the comprehensive school system in 1975. The comprehensive school meant that all pupils complete nine years of schooling. Because the whole age group stayed at school and in the same class for so many years, the teaching systems had to be modified as well. One of the main ideas of the comprehensive school was to change teaching to be more pupil centred. One factor contributing to this kind of thinking was Neill’s book Summerhill (Neill, 1960), which was translated into Finnish at the end of the 1960’s.

Quite a significant quantity of research was conducted, where researchers observed classrooms. Different observing methods framed the research, for instance Flanders system, Bellack’s linguistic move theory, Bales’s feeling category analysis system and Sinclair’s and Coulthart’s discourse analysis. This research showed that despite of the new curriculum, teaching remained mostly teacher centered and followed the model where the teacher asks questions and the pupils answer.

The next curriculum was published in 1985, and it strengthened pupil centred teaching. The investigations done during that time, however, showed that the pedagogical situation did not change. The average teacher’s main teaching style remained the same.

In 1992 yet another new curriculum was published. Before that the Educational Board of Finland asked some educational experts to write small books that discussed for instance new learning theories, i.e. constructivism. The teachers had to read those books so that they could get new ideas with which they could renew their teaching practices. The curriculum, however, was not yet underpinned by constructivism.

At the same time, in teacher education, pupil centred approaches have been the main focus in Finnish universities: both the primary school teacher students and the subject teacher students have been taught to forget their own school experiences in the theoretical studies as well as during the practical teaching periods.

The latest curriculum came to effect this autumn 2005 – now with a long chapter on constructivism. Teacher educators are hoping for a change, finally, in Finnish schools.
The purpose, the sample and the method of the study

As in all the other teacher training institutes in Finland we in the University of Joensuu, at the Faculty of Education and in Department of Applied Education arrange the so called Teacher’s Pedagogical Studies (60 ECTS credits). Ordinary subject teacher students take this course in the third or fourth year. In 1999 it was estimated that there will be a shortage of subject teachers especially in mathematics, physics, chemistry, English and Finnish. Some universities were therefore allocated extra funds from the Ministry of Education for the purpose of schooling a group of unqualified teachers, who had been working for years in different parts of Finland. This subject teacher education started at our Department in 2001. Studies in this programme start at the beginning of the autumn term and take two years, because most of the students keep on working during their studies.

My purpose in this qualitative case study is to investigate what these students (N=40) learn of teaching and learning during their studies. As I mentioned in the last chapter, old teaching methods have been very difficult to change. Hence we have chosen quite a new approach to teach these students. The first idea was to use new educational media in their studies as much as possible. On the other hand, that was the only possibility, because studying in this programme can be characterised partly as distance learning. We begun to work in WebCT environment but last autumn it was changed to MOODLE, because it seemed to be an easier environment to use.

In 1999 - 2002 I was the Finnish coordinator of an EU Comenius project called Think, Create, Innovate. The project produced internet pages concerning: 1) creativity, 2) ICT in learning, 3) cooperative learning, 4) problem solving, and 5) project work. The purpose of those pages was to help teachers to develop their teaching and to get new ideas for their daily work at schools. The purpose was also to integrate European teachers and to increase international group work between schools from different countries, in this case from Spain, Great Britain, Czech Republic, and Finland.

My course ‘Basic studies in teaching and learning’ contains 20 hours of lectures and some exercises done at the Joensuu Normal School during the students’ first practise period. These students follow six hours of lectures and afterwards they study materials produced in the project. First they read the material and then discuss their ideas in their own subject groups. Finally they write a summary of all the discussions, which I also read and give them feedback.

The students have to read what is written about three topics: creativity, problem solving, and co-operative learning. In this study I will analyse their discussions concerning cooperative learning and problem solving (Those materials are mainly made by Professor Dana Nezvalova from the Department of Physics, Faculty of Sciences, Palacky University, Olomouc, Czech Republic).
My research questions were:

1. What kind of discussions do the subject teacher students produce after reading texts on co-operative learning?
2. What kind of applications can they make to their own teaching subject?
3. What kind of discussions do the subject teacher students produce after reading texts on problem solving?
4. What kind of applications can they make to their own teaching subject?

I have read the discussions produced by the subject teacher students from years 2001-2004 several times by using content analysis. First I tried to find out, how the students had understood the concepts of problem solving and cooperative learning. After that I classified the discussions and the summaries in order to find out a) what kind of understanding their discussions showed, and b) what applications they had made.

I read the students’ discussions and conclusions for the first time when they wrote them during the course and again when I had to evaluate their performances for grading the course. For this study I read the texts over and over again in order to get a clear picture of their ideas. For this reason I have not, for instance, asked anyone else to read the text in order to verify the credibility of my interpretations. I will do that later when I analyse the whole material and take into account also the students’ discussions on the third topic, creativity. In my later research I will also analyze students’ self esteem products based on effective teaching elements by Kyriacou (1991).

**Some theoretical starting points**

**Learning by using ICT**

One of our main purposes in using learning material produced on internet pages and working in WebCT or MOODLE environment has been to teach subject teacher students to use ICT. Lehtinen and Sinko (1999) have concluded that there are over 1000 research papers that have shown that ICT students learn more and faster and that ICT improves students’ motivation. Lehtinen and Sinko have also listed some of the self-evident benefits of information and communication technology as follows: interactivity, possibilities for multiple representations, possibilities to simulate real phenomena, world wide access to information, and tools for synchronous and asynchronous communication.

Salomon, Perkins and Globerson (1992) refer to cognitive effects as “effects with technology obtained during intellectual partnership with it, and effects of it in terms of the transferable cognitive residue that this partnership leaves behind in the form of better mastery of skills and strategies”.
In our case, this has been the second important reason to teach students to use ICT as a discussion platform and to learn some new teaching methods and behaviour from each other. The idea of collaborative learning is based on Vygotsky’s ideas:

Every function in the child's cultural development appears twice: first, on the social level, and later, on the individual level; first, between people (interpsychological) and then inside the child (intrapsychological). This applies equally to voluntary attention, to logical memory, and to the formation of concepts. All the higher functions originate as actual relationships between individuals. (Vygotsky, 1978, 57)

Although the subject teacher students are not children any more, this idea can be seen significant in all new learning situations. In a way the students are children because of their few teaching experiences: most of them do have teaching experiences, but their theoretical knowledge of different teaching methods etc. is poor.

Also Rogoff (1990, 90) emphasizes the idea of cognitive apprenticeship. By that she means that it supports learning in a domain by enabling students to acquire, develop and use cognitive tools in authentic domain activity. Learning advances through collaborative social interaction and the social construction of knowledge.

**Some aspects related to the two strategies used in student-centred teaching:**

**problem solving and cooperative learning**

The internet pages that the students have to read before they start to write their opinions about problem solving and cooperative learning describe both of these teaching/learning strategies in quite an illustrative way. They explain how these strategies work and what the teacher’s role is in each part of the process. Hence something could be said on the general principles of these two strategies.

Problem solving is usually defined as formulating new answers, going beyond the simple application of previously learned rules to achieve a goal. Problem solving is what happens when no solution is obvious. (Mayer & Wittrock, 1996) Some psychologists suggest that most human learning involves problem solving (Anderson, 1993).

This example shows, I think, that if the teaching is based for instance on problem solving or on problem based learning, the pupils really are the subjects of their learning and the role of the teacher is to support their learning. That is one of the main reasons we have chosen this kind of teaching activity to teach our subject teacher students.

The research indicates that cooperative learning has positive effects on pupils’ empathy, tolerance for differences, feelings of acceptance, friendships, self-confidence, and even school attendance (Solomon, Watson & Battistich, 2001). The terms group work and cooperative learning are often used synonymously, but their meaning is not the same. Group work simply means that several pupils work together whereas the meaning of co-operative learning is much wider (Woolfolk,
2005, 479). In our case, Vygotsky’s theory (i.e. 1978) concerning the meaning of social interaction in learning situations has been important in choosing co-operative learning as an example to teach subject teacher students some pupil centred strategies. These are seen as suitable for teaching most of those subject areas that our students come from.

Results

Cooperative learning: The concept of cooperative learning

The students, whose discussions I have now studied, are almost unanimously of the opinion, that cooperative learning is a good way to improve the social skills of the pupils, even though it can be said, that good social skills are a prerequisite for successful co-operative learning.

The students wrote, for example:

Cooperative learning offers children an opportunity to work with other children, to value them and listen to their opinions from early on. Through co-operative learning pupils on the first grades of elementary school can understand that they have an important role in the group, and if the group wants to perform well, s/he also has to make an effort. The more effort s/he makes, the better results the group can achieve.

Cooperative learning was also seen to improve the pupil’s sense of duty as each participant has to carry some responsibility on their own learning as well as that of the other participants. This reflects a transfer from focusing on the self to taking others also into consideration as well. An ideal would be that all classroom activities would be conducted respecting the principles of co-operative learning.

Cooperative learning is based on values that have been discussed and agreed on together. These values mean a shift from competitive, individual-centred thinking towards a process where other participants are helped in their learning as well. This process does not only have objectives related to gaining knowledge, but also objectives related to learning to learn in a more social and ethical manner.

When considering the possibility of using cooperative learning methods with teenage pupils, the pupils themselves were seen as an obstacle to satisfactorily using the method.

Many of the pupil’s have been accustomed to being passive and this can lead to them also being quite timid. In cooperative learning they should learn to take responsibility. Also many teenagers have problems with social interaction skills.

Cooperative learning was also seen as one way of changing the students’ attitudes:

Cooperative learning can change the attitudes of the pupils towards both the teacher and the other pupils.

In the students’ discussion, one distinct advantage of cooperative learning was also, that through this method the pupils can teach each other.
Many children learn better and faster from children of their own age than from a teacher. On the other hand, the pupil who takes the role of a teacher has to understand the subject matter. Perhaps not all pupils can master this.

Student discussions, and naturally also the summaries made of these discussions, focus most on comparing traditional group work and cooperative learning methods. The students had negative experiences of group work from their own school times and this contributed to attitudes being univocally positive towards cooperative learning.

**Cooperative learning and teaching subject of the participant students**

Students participating in the course had very positive attitudes towards co-operative learning. This fact was stressed also in the summaries made of the student discussions. Not many individual contributions to the discussions mentioned examples on what type of issues or themes could be taught through this method. The following examples show, however, that while studying the material the students had kept in mind the practical implications in teaching their own subject area.

In studying languages cooperative learning would suit well, for example, for repeating grammar lessons, such as memorizing cases. It would be good also for studying the culture and geography of the countries where the language is spoken. I would not, however, use it to teach new topics on a grammar lesson.

**Problem solving: The meaning of problem solving**

Subject teacher students’ discussions concerning problem solving can be divided into four different types. Some of them think that problem solving is best used mainly in situations where teachers have problems managing the class, when pupils disturb teaching and learning or with pupils that have social problems.

A teacher has also pedagogical problems: what is the atmosphere in the class. The beginning of a lesson can be critical for the whole lesson, for instance if something difficult happened during the break, the problem must be handled immediately. The atmosphere for teaching and learning has to be suitable.

The second issue the subject teacher students discussed concerned planning lessons: how carefully the teacher must think about everything beforehand and what the main questions or the most meaningful parts of one lesson are. This understanding of problem solving is natural, of course, because the students’ experiences in planning lessons or in estimating how many different things can be discussed during one lesson are so poor. The word problem has been understood in quite a wide sense, in its general meaning.

My opinion is that problem solving is one of the main things in a teacher’s work. Planning education requires that the teacher can put many things together, the planning of a single lesson as well: the use of time, priority of what is the most important thing to teach, choosing the “right” teaching methods and analysing the needs of different pupils.
The third meaning the students gave was the “real” meaning of the term: problem solving was seen as a good teaching approach.

Problem solving must be connected with reality. The pupils have to understand that there is not only one right answer or solution to the task. Hence the pupils must be encouraged already from the first school years to tell their opinions and to argue their solutions. This will lead to deeper learning.

Problem solving means development and creativity, which both are skills needed also out of the school. Pupils should be taught to solve problems independently so that they can make the right decisions in their life.

The students also thought about problem solving from the pupils’ point of view, as the following quotes exemplify:

If the pupil has adopted his/her knowledge by using the atomistic way in his/her studying, abilities for problem solving are not as good as with pupils, who have used holistic approach in their studies. The pupil may also have difficulties to find the right problem solving strategies due to the lack of experience or because of the tasks are too difficult.

For the fourth understanding of problem solving the students evaluated models presented in the material in groups. Almost all groups came to the same conclusion: the different models seem to define problem solving approximately the same way as an ongoing process. They thought also that both the pupils and other people solve problems intuitively and they are not conscious of the different steps presented in the models.

We think that no one is conscious that he or she is operating according to some model; different steps in problem solving situations follow each other. We do not evaluate whether the solution is good or bad: evaluation follows naturally despite of the way the problem was solved.

**Problem solving and the teaching subject**

Most of the subject teachers who connected problem solving with their teaching subject were language teachers. These examples show, how they thought about using this approach in their own teaching.

In language teaching the children like exercises, where there is a clearly defined problem and only one solution, i.e. “What is the opposite of this word?” or crosswords. But if they have to translate the sentence, they are not eager to do it, because they think that the translation is difficult.

In art education most problems have many solutions, because the main thing is always self-expression.

These examples show that the subject teacher students can reflect on possible new directions to teaching. In most conclusions that they made they also understood problem solving as a pupil centred way of learning.
The pupils have to learn problem solving already from the beginning of their schooling instead of passively receiving knowledge that the teacher tries to transfer from his/her head to the pupils’ minds.

Conclusions

Student discussions and the summaries that were based on the discussions gave a clear picture of how the students learned both from each other and from independent study of the course material. The summaries also show distinctly that even those participants who at first expressed different opinions later changed their point of view.

Both cooperative learning and problem solving are teaching methods, which have been discussed for years, but have been slow to evolve into the daily practice, at least in Finnish schools. Reading the student discussions also brought joy as in almost all of the student contributions these methods were connected to constructivism and change in the role of the teacher. The students saw the teacher as a mentor, who supports the pupils when they are experiencing difficulties, and who guides the work done by the pupils. It would therefore seem that a new generation of teachers, who are more open to new ways of teaching is emerging. This can, at least, be said of the opinions expressed by the group of participants in this web course. It would be worth another study to see how they themselves work as teachers.

References


Socialisation in the changing learning environment:
Some considerations for research

Veronika Kalmus

Socialisation is a significant area of study, which is currently out of the mainstream research agenda. It seems that the concept of socialisation and now popular concepts of the “information society”, the “digital age”, etc. belong to different research paradigms or discourses. Nevertheless, this does not mean that practices of socialisation have ceased to take place in the so-called information age. Practices are changing (together with learning environments) and are certainly difficult to study, but this does not imply that we should not conduct research in this area.

In this theoretically-oriented article, I will outline some considerations which are important to bear in mind when studying socialisation in the changing information environment. First of all, I shall pose the question of whether anything is changing at all; that is, I will briefly discuss the concept of the “information age”. Secondly, I will define what I mean by the concept of socialisation. The main part of the article discusses some theoretical considerations regarding socialisation and education in the informatising society.

Are we entering a new age?

The concepts of the “information age”, the “information society”, the “knowledge society”, the “media society”, the “information revolution”, “new media” etc. are widely used and contested among social scientists. I tend to agree with the party of more sceptical authors who suggest that the concept of the information society should be granted the status of “problematic” (Lyon, 1988). The concept has definitely some value as a heuristic device in exploring features of the contemporary world, but it is too inexact and too ideological to be acceptable as a definitive term (Webster, 2002, 21).

Moreover, several writers, for instance Anthony Giddens (1987), Herbert Schiller (1996) and Frank Webster (2002), emphasise general continuity over change in contemporary societies. These and some other authors (e.g. May, 2002) can be described as sharing a thesis about the informatisation (or informationalisation) of society, believing that informational developments must be accounted for in terms of historical antecedents and continuities. Giddens has noted that modern societies have been “information societies” since their beginnings (Giddens, 1987, 27). The problem of the label of “information” becomes even more acute in the context of education and socialisation, which has been information-laden already in the pre-modern era. It is, however, reasonable to talk about the changing information environment as well as about the changing learning environment (not about, for instance, the “new learning environment”).
Despite the multifaceted critique on the concept of the information society, there is some consensus among writers using the concept or its many synonyms. Most of them agree that “information is now of pivotal importance in contemporary affairs… that not only is there a very great deal more information about than ever before, but also that it plays a central and strategic role in pretty well everything we do” (Webster, 2002, 263). The ever-changing practices and patterns of production, consumption and interpretation of mediated information also have implications for education and socialisation.

**The concept of socialisation**

The English word “socialisation” has many meanings. The social scientific usage of the term embraces two aspects of the designated process. The first aspect derives from the point of view of society. In this sense, socialisation means transmission of the culture of the society to individuals. The second aspect of socialisation derives from the point of view of the individual and means the process of becoming human in one’s social environment (McCron, 1976).

It is possible to move beyond the society/individual dichotomy by taking a view of socialisation as an interactive, dialectical process between two sets of actors – the individuals being socialised and the agents of socialisation. This perspective is, in fact, favoured by a number of scholars (e.g. Berger & Luckmann, 1991 [1966]; Giddens, 1984; Rosengren, 1994). I consider it helpful to describe this dialectical process as taking place in the “field of socialisation” (Kalmus, 2003), which embraces the individuals being socialised, the agents of socialisation, and the dominant and peripheral sub-systems of the society (cf. Pawelka, 1977). Between these four components there are mutually influential relationships which can be described in terms of agency and structure. In theories of socialisation, “structure” normally refers to society and its institutions, which function as the agents of socialisation, while “agency” refers to the individual being socialised. I tend to think that “agency”, with necessary conceptual elaboration, can be used also with regard to agents of socialisation; to designate on one hand their varying ability to influence the individuals being socialised, and on the other to refer to their potential of intervening in and transforming the very social system and its structural principles they are intended to reproduce through socialisation.

The two main aspects of socialisation (society and individuals) may be maintained, however, as separate analytical categories for distinguishing between the macro level and micro level of analysis. On the macro-level, I prefer to think about socialisation as a set of intentional, mainly discursive, practices guided by the ideological agenda of the society or a particular socialising agent. This aspect of socialisation can be studied by analysing, for instance, school curricula, textbooks, media content, etc. On the micro-level, socialisation refers to practices of interaction between the individual being socialised and the society or socialising agent. Such practices can be studied by looking at, for instance, reception of textbooks or media content, or socialisation in families (e.g. parents-children interaction).
Research questions for studying socialisation

We can pose two broad research questions for the macro-level and the micro-level of analysis, respectively. The macro-level question would be: What type of socialising practices do the various interest groups in society employ in order to maintain or build the society, which allows them to pursue their interests and retain or improve their positions of authority (cf. McCron, 1976, 30)? The micro-level question would be: How do individuals, faced with the constraints and opportunities of the structural properties of society, engage in and interpret the practices of socialisation?

Relations between knowledge and power

In examining the macro-level question first, it is important to pay critical attention to how informational developments are handled in public discourse. As several authors (e.g. Lyon, 1988; May, 2002; Robins & Webster, 1989) have warned us, the coming of the information society is often viewed as an entirely natural and logical social advance. This type of discourse, however, glosses over the reality of domination by powerful, particularly economic, interests and advances the prospect of technocratic control and the so-called “cybernetic order” (Robins & Webster, 1989, 8). Kevin Robins and Frank Webster (1989) urge us to look at the hidden values of technocratic thought, especially its implications for school curricula. They argue, for instance, that the “information revolution” and the emergence of neo-Fordist management are closely associated with changes in the nature and philosophy of education. Robins and Webster rely on Jean-François Lyotard’s discussion of the “postmodern condition” which has brought along the instrumentalisation and commodification of knowledge, and its subordination to the principle of “performativity”. Accordingly, educational institutions are “required to produce competences and no longer ideals” (Lyotard, 1979, 79). Robins and Webster are convinced that even the “discourse of ‘computer literacy’ embellishes and simultaneously clouds the real issue on the government’s agenda: work literacy” (Robins & Webster, 1989, 125). In a similar vein, John M. Broughton (1984) has argued that the hidden curriculum of computer literacy encourages the development of liberal, positivist values such as individualism, voluntarism, instrumentalism and utilitarianism. These important considerations, unfortunately, remain mostly theoretical and speculative in these authors’ work. They have, however, revived extremely relevant questions for empirical research in the informatising society, questions which address the relation between knowledge and power, namely: “What is taught in schools? Why is it taught? In whose interests is it taught in this way at this time? Above all, what is not taught? And why not?” (Robins & Webster, 1989, 276).

On the micro-level, there are several considerations to be taken into account when studying socialisation in the informatising society.
Emerging learning communities

It is important to bear in mind that individuals are not isolated from one another when they engage in and interpret the practices of socialisation. We have to consider that discursive practices of socialisation are increasingly faced with what Stanley Fish (1980) has called “interpretive communities”; that is, by groups receiving, interpreting and interacting with the same messages at the same time. Some authors, for instance David Buckingham and Don Tapscott, point to the development of informal, democratic and sometimes international “learning communities” (Buckingham, 2003, 202) on the Internet, where pupils and students rely on each other for doing their homework and “debate everything online” (Tapscott, 1998, 134). They may also discuss many aspects of schooling, including the behaviour of their teachers. Empirically, Mark Warschauer (1999) has shown in his study of computer-mediated communication in college classrooms in the state of Hawaii how students, through electronic interaction and reflection with their colleagues and teacher, achieved new understandings and even reinterpreted their previous readings of texts.

The changing nature of texts

The changing nature of texts has several crucial implications for socialisation and education. Authors who have written about hypertext and multimedia (e.g. Bolter, 2003; Kress, 2003; Landow, 1997) speak about the changing relationship between author, text and reader: the importance and authority of the author and the text are lessening, whereas the importance, freedom and power of the reader are increasing. If we consider the potential of hypertext and multimedia on the World Wide Web, we can see that the processes of reading and writing become analytically even more complex. Firstly, the Internet places an unprecedented amount of information on any topic at the hands of individuals with access; and secondly, the Internet makes any computer user a potential “author of a new kind” who can produce and publish texts, alter texts, write and “write back” (Kress, 2003, 173). In accordance with overall changes in texts in the age of multimedia, school textbooks have also begun to change. Conventional textbooks are:

carefully structured, coherent expositions of knowledge, knowledge to engage with reflectively and to ‘absorb’. The new ‘books’ are often collections of worksheets; no careful development of complex coherent structures here, and no deliberate carefully reflective engagement with these pages. These are books to work with, to do things with, to act with and often to act on (Kress, 2003, 21).

The changing role of the agents of socialisation

There is a reason to speak about the changing role and importance of the agents of socialisation. I will firstly discuss the media.

It is obvious that the media are less and less mass oriented as markets and audiences have been “segmented and specifically targeted” (Castells, 1999, 48). In connection
with this we can also speak of the growing fragmentation of audiences and the individualisation of media consumption, reception and production. Such developments have been welcomed by advocates of the “communications revolution” as the increasing “empowerment” of audiences by new media. However, more sceptical observers, for instance David Buckingham, argue that audiences are more likely to simply have ever-increasing opportunities to consume rather similar media contents in terms of quality and the values of consumer society (Buckingham, 2003, 30). Another important observation by Buckingham is that previously distinct boundaries between children’s and adults’ media worlds are simultaneously disappearing and being reinforced. On the one hand, children have easier access to media contents meant for adults, while on the other hand, they are increasingly participating in globalising cultural and social worlds that are inaccessible and incomprehensible to their parents and teachers (Buckingham, 2002, 32). Moreover, as Jane Kenway and Elizabeth Bullen (2001) point out, the “knowledge politics” of children’s consumer culture often explicitly oppose those of formal schooling – children’s media culture has increasingly become an arena in which values of conformity and seriousness are subverted and undermined.

Regarding the role of the school, there is wide consensus among authors: critical as well as celebratory writers agree that the role of the school has diminished in the informatising society. This claim is supported by the axiom about the death of intermediaries in every field (defended, for instance, by Bill Gates; see Mattelart, 2003, 138). In line with this, the commodification of knowledge and the simultaneous “industrialisation of training” (Mattelart, 2003, 140) lessen the importance of the school and the university as agencies in their own right, and leave the individual as a free-floating unit faced more or less directly with the values, offers and demands of the market in general and the labour market in particular. Also, the function and tasks of teachers are changing. At a time when knowledge is becoming increasingly commodified and organised, “teachers lose control of the curricular and pedagogic skills to large publishing houses” (Apple, 1982, 114). Accordingly, the function of teachers becomes that of implementing school and classroom management strategies (Robins & Webster, 1989, 262). In the universities, the age of the professor is drawing to an end. As Jean-François Lyotard has put it, the professor “is no more competent than networks of memory banks for transmitting established knowledge, no more competent than interdisciplinary teams for dreaming up new moves and new games” (Lyotard, 1979, 88).

Developments of the same sort are celebrated by techno-optimistic writers such as Seymour Papert, Nicholas Negroponte, Don Tapscott and many others. Papert declares that Ivan Illich’s well-known conception of a deschooled society will become a reality and even a necessity with the presence of computers that will, in his words, undermine the old vested interests and the hierarchical system of knowledge that now characterises society (Papert, 1979, 85). Negroponte proudly proclaims that we may be a society with “far more teaching-disabled environments” and “far fewer learning-disabled children” as the computer facilitates “learning by doing” and “playing with information” which makes the material more meaningful
Workshop 2: Textbooks and Educational Media in the Learning Environment

(Negroponte, 1995, 198-199). Tapscott argues that by exploiting the digital media, educators and students can shift to a new, more powerful and more effective paradigm of interactive learning. This may involve, for instance, a shift away from pedagogy to the creation of learning partnerships and learning cultures, a shift from learning as torture to learning as fun, and a shift from the teacher as transmitter to the teacher as facilitator (Tapscott, 1998, 142-149).

Some empirical studies on this matter (e.g. Sandholtz, Ringstaff & Dwyer, 1997; Warschauer, 1999), however, confirm that the sociocultural context of a school strongly influences how computers are used with students. Moreover, “this influence is neither total nor direct but is mediated by the beliefs of individual teachers” (Warschauer, 1999, 37). Teachers have “a degree of autonomy within the constraints of established school and classroom structures” (Warschauer, 1999, 41). According to Henry Giroux (1988), teachers are not only objects of societal and institutional influence but also agents for transforming their own teaching and their institutions.

In terms of the theoretical model of socialisation, it is likely correct to assume that in the field of education there is a multi-layered system of structures and agencies, in which the agency of individual teachers is still relatively important vis-à-vis the structures of the particular school, the education system and society.

The changing relations of authority

Most of the authors agree that relations of authority and power between adults and children are changing in many ways in the informatising society. First of all, children have gained power as consumers of media (and as consumers in general): “As children’s access to technology increases, they no longer have to watch or read what their parents choose” (Buckingham, 2003, 28). Moreover, due to the new media technologies, authorship is no longer rare, which brings about a lessening in the author’s or the text’s authority (Kress, 2003, 6). This allows Gunther Kress to argue that there is no longer an unquestioned acceptance of textual power (that means, adults’ power), not even in schools (Kress, 2003, 173). Some empirical studies have shown that once students got used to working with computers in schools, they began to challenge traditional assumptions about classroom organisation (Sandholtz, Ringstaff & Dwyer, 1997; Warschauer, 1999).

Probably the bravest assertions on this matter have been put forward by Don Tapscott (1998). Much of his argumentation is based on the claim that for the first time in history, children are more knowledgeable and literate than their parents and teachers about an innovation central to society, that is, computers and the Internet. He argues that the Net Generation, the first to grow up surrounded by digital media, “bathed in bits”, will transform all traditional institutions. He believes that families are becoming more open in the sense that authority is shared more than in the past, as children are an authority on an important issue. Also, the power dynamic between pupils and teachers will be forever altered, not only because at times pupils train teachers in how to use computers, but also as education moves from the paradigm of teacher as transmitter of information to pupils learning through discovery and new
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

media. Tapscott goes further, arguing that because the Net Generation has the tools to question, challenge and disagree, this generation is becoming a generation of critical thinkers. He believes they will force institutions such as the market, business and government to move towards greater democracy, interactivity, responsiveness and access, and question fundamental tenets of the social order. I believe we have every reason for being rather sceptical about this assertion. As Kevin Robins and Frank Webster (1989) argue, relations of power and control do not just dissolve away; they may merely take another form. My hypothesis is that the mediating agency (and, hence, authority) of the family and the school in the field of socialisation may, indeed, be lessening, leaving children interacting more directly with other institutions and the social system.

Concluding remarks

This brings us to the conclusion that changes in one agent of socialisation (e.g. the media) instigate changes in the role and authority of others such as the school, the family and peer groups. It seems that the importance of the school and the family is lessening to some extent in the informatising society, while the importance of peer groups (as members of the Net Generation, learning communities and consumer trend setters), may be growing. In other words, the mediating agency of the family and the school in the field of socialisation may be decreasing, leaving individuals interacting more directly with the social system.

Finally, we have to take into account that there are overwhelming information inequalities between different countries and also within countries. Globally, most children are not growing up digital (Tapscott, 1998, 12). Moreover, there are several very powerful social and cultural factors such as religion, ethnicity, social class and gender which are intervening with the developments I have outlined above. Therefore, we cannot actually talk about any uniform model of socialisation in the informatising society. Instead, we have a great diversity of possible socialisation patterns, which call for further research and theoretisation.

Notes

I am grateful to the Institute for Advanced Studies in the Humanities at the University of Edinburgh for research scholarship that enabled the preparation of this article. The work was supported also by the research grant No. 5799 financed by the Estonian Science Foundation and the research grant “Formation of the 21st Century Media Society in Estonia” financed by the Estonian Governmental Scientific Research Support Scheme.

References


Fish, Stanley. 1980. Is There a Text in This Class? The Authority of Interpretive Communities. Cambridge, MA and London: Harvard University Press.


Students’ Learning Strategies: Statistical Types and their relationship with Computer Literacy
Diana Šaparnienė

Introduction
As modern society is becoming more oriented to advanced technologies, a new type of literacy - computer literacy – is being more widely discussed. Like reading, which by socialisation scholars is sometimes rightly called the socialisation of socialisation or secondary socialisation, computer literacy has become an essential precondition for a person's successful socialisation and his/her professional career. For this reason education, as an important factor for society development, has begun to play an essential role, particularly in addressing the issue of literacy and computer literacy in particular.

Not surprisingly, the issue of computer literacy is increasingly widely addressed in research works around the world as well as in Lithuania (Hayden, 1999; Johnson, Eisenberg, 1991; McMillan, 1996; Mitra, 1998; Oderkirk, 1996; Petruškas, 1998; Šaparnienė, 2002, Šaparnienė et al., 2002). Analysis of the scientific literature has proved that the impact of cognitive and non-cognitive personality traits on computer literacy levels has not been sufficiently studied. The impact of personality traits on computer literacy and its level was researched by M. Igbaria, A. Chakrabarti (1990), A. Harrison, R.K.Jr. Rainer, (1996), G. A. Marcoulides, Y. Stocker, L. D. Marcoulides (2004), et al. At an international level and especially in Lithuania there is a shortage of research on computer literacy analyzing whether a person's preference for one or another learning strategy can influence the development of his/her computer literacy. The question of whether searching for statistical types of the investigated persons results in the demonstration of different computer literacy levels and other important factors still remains unanswered.

A number of factors influence a person’s academic achievement and his/her occupational success. Work with new technologies requires new, different abilities as compared to work with the old ones. The fact is that these new abilities are more “cognitive”. In order to satisfy his/her need to communicate, work and learn, a person has to perceive their surroundings, be attentive to certain moments and elements of activities, think and express him/herself. This means that a person’s activities are impossible without cognitive processes. The latter are developed through activities or expressed by special types of activities.

Understanding of a person’s cognitive abilities is necessary for his/her effective education and development. Despite the fact that the link between a person's computer literacy and his/her cognitive features is evident, the issue has so far not been widely studied.
Although the success of human activities is determined by a number of variables, an important position in the hierarchy of learning success is occupied by a person’s learning strategies. D.M. Smith and D.A. Colb (1996) state that a person’s learning strategy defines how he/she behaves in various everyday situations; he/she learns more effectively, easily, and comfortably when his/her learning needs are generated by his/her learning experience. In other words, a learning strategy outlines the way a person learns. For example, R. Dunn (1986) defines learning strategy as a way of perceiving and preserving information and abilities. Many authors (Gregore, 1979; Davidson et al., 1992) emphasize that learning strategy is an obvious observed behaviour, which reveals how a person gains, processes and collects information. Basically the presented definitions state that learning strategy is linked with the way a person processes and perceives information in learning situations. Moreover, scientists agree that learning ways and habits are a conditionally permanent construct, invariable in various learning situations and contents. However, in the course of time, learning strategies may change with changes in experience.

Research on computer usage confirms that learning strategies contribute to success. For example, R.P. Bostrom and others (1990) ascertain that while learning to work with a computer, students of a convergent learning style (Colb’s taxonomy) achieve better results than students of other learning styles. G.V. Davidson and others (1992) also maintain that students who have certain learning strategies perform better than others.

Literature surveys (foreign and Lithuanian) have clearly shown a shortage of research in which the relation between computer literacy and a person’s cognitive abilities is examined. One of the reasons for this could be the narrowness of the investigated theories.

The aim of this article is to identify and describe existing students’ statistical types by their learning strategies and to show the connection with factual computer literacy. The paper deals with the scientific problem related to the hypothetical assumption about the impact of a person’s cognitive trait - learning strategies - on the peculiarities of computer literacy in the system of higher education.

**Research methodology and characteristics of empirical basis**

The empirical-experimental part of the present study is based on a series of diagnostic studies of 1004 surveyed students. They represented 4 universities and 5 high schools and colleges in Lithuania. 84.7% of the sample were university students, 15.3% – students from high schools and colleges. The majority of the sample, 73.1% (N=733) were students from management and economics study programmes. The remaining respondents (22.9%, N=271) included students from other areas: education, philology, informatics, physics, mathematics, technical, agricultural and health sciences. The study was based on voluntary participation and anonymity.
Study instruments. A test (theoretical and practical) on computer literacy (CL) and 2 anonymous closed type questionnaires “Student and computer” and “Student and studies”, consisting of a series of questions on computer literacy and studies, were designed (Šaparnienė, 2002). The study instruments (tests) designed by other researchers were used to study the respondents’ attention, to rate their general intelligence and their knowledge of terminology, and to measure their verbal and non-verbal intelligence.

The presented paper analyses the most significant empirical research findings, which identify students’ statistical types by their learning strategies and the relationship with computer literacy. For this purpose the respondents’ answers to the questions on learning strategies (questionnaire “Student and studies”) and the results of the test on computer literacy are analysed.

Psychometric validity of the diagnostic study variables identified and discussed in the article.

1) Computer literacy test. Using the method of expert analysis, a two-part computer literacy test was designed. With the aim of assessing the respondents’ general knowledge of computers, 19 theoretical questions were included in the first part of the test. The second part of the test was composed of 24 practical tasks, to assess the respondents’ competence using the applied software in practice. For every step in the test percentage frequency was calculated and the parameters for main tendencies were selected: average, standard error and standard deviation (Table 1). With the aim of measuring computer literacy, standard validity rates are presented in Table 2. The rates presented in the table are evidence that the scale constructed to measure computer literacy is valid (Bortz, 1993; Anastasi, Urbina, 2001).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1. Parameters of the computer literacy test scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scale average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical part of the test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical part of the test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2. Validity indices of the computer literacy test scale</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cronbach coefficient</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical part of the test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical part of the test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Test on learning strategies (or learning ways and habits). The test consists of 81 statements, which reveal various learning aspects and learning factors, starting from
special logic and psychological learning techniques and tactics and concluding with the management of learning time, learning ergonomics, etc. The psychometric validity of the scale was evaluated by factorial analysis using the method of Principal Components and VARIMAX rotation. 19 factors were extracted during primary factorial analysis; secondary factorial analysis multiplexed the statements to the model of 6 factors (which explains 55.7% of dispersion of the variables). Factorial analysis (especially secondary factorial analysis) presented a rather significant link between the majority of statements and the factors; their inside grouping is theoretically significant. It should be noted that a rather high correlation of the statements’ estimation with extracted factors was obtained. This is evidenced by the limits of the meaning variation of the correlation coefficient ($0.52 \leq r \leq 0.88$). The descriptive power (dispersion) of the factors ranges from 15.8% to 10.7%. Kaiser-Meyer-Olkin (KMO) coefficient, which in this case is 0.80, shows to what extent the matrix is valid for the factorial analysis. Inner consistence of the factors, evaluated by Cronbach alpha coefficient, remains above the limit of 0.5, therefore, all five factors are homogeneous enough.

The first factor, explaining 15.8% of the dispersion of all the variables, combined the statements on structured, methodological activities: intended planning of learning time, learning the exactly marked amount of material, planning the succession of the learning material, usage of schemes, marks, summaries, etc.

The second factor, explaining 15% of the dispersion, combined the statements on reflectivity: attempts to relate new material, conceptions and theories with the old ones and experience, comparison of various theories and conceptions, search for alternatives, critical evaluation of the studied material, etc.

The third factor combined the statements on interactive learning in a group (dispersion – 13.4%), the fourth factor – learning ergonomics (dispersion – 10.7%).

In the secondary factorial analysis the factors shortage of advertence and orientation to learn by heart (mnemonic learning) formed individual cases.

**Research results**

In order to divide the respondents into groups by their learning strategies, statistic analysis of the respondents was carried out. For classification Cluster Analysis was used. Since the number of the surveyed students and the classified objects is quite large, k – Means (k – number of clusters) cluster analysis was chosen. The determined cluster structure is shown in the graphs below.

Typologization of the surveyed students by their learning strategies was significant. The classification was made using six subscales of the analyzed scale, obtained through secondary factorial analysis. The format of the scale answers is four-staged and includes the following variants of answers: “especially rarely”, “rarely”, “often”, “very often”. According to the dynamics the respondents (N=774) were
attributed to three clusters, in what appeared to be the most informative and best interpretable way. Graphic expression is presented in Figure 1.

![Figure 1. Typology of learning strategies. 3-cluster model (N = 774)](image)

The first group consists of 27.6% surveyed students, the second – 35.0% and the third – 37.4% surveyed students. Table 2 illustrates percentage distribution in the clusters by gender. In the first and third clusters there are relatively more women, in the second cluster men evidently dominate.

**Cluster 1.** This cluster includes attentive students who are motivated to learn structurally and methodically. Reflectivity and mnemonic learning are characteristic for them; they need supportive and favourable learning conditions (suitable ergonomics). The surveyed students in this cluster are more likely to learn individually than interactively, i.e. individual learning is characteristic for them. This is conditionally a group of individual (or functional) learners.

**Table 3. Percentage distribution of the surveyed students in the clusters by gender**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Cluster 1</th>
<th>Cluster 2</th>
<th>Cluster 3</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cluster 1</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>23,9%</td>
<td>29,2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cluster 2</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>52,2%</td>
<td>27,9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cluster 3</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>23,9%</td>
<td>42,9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>548</td>
<td>37,4%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cluster 2. Specific learning attitudes and habits are not characteristic for this group. The surveyed students value some interactive work in a group, and sometimes reflective, mnemonic ways of learning are typical for them; however, they are not attentive or motivated to learn structurally and methodically. Dysfunctional learning is more characteristic for them. Table 2 illustrates that this group includes the highest percentage of male students. It could be that the mentioned features partially reflect a male stereotype.

Cluster 3. This is a functional group of leaders. High interactivity in a group, motivated, methodical, structured (although not always attentive activities) and sometimes mnemonic learning are characteristic for this group. Ergonomic conditions in the learning process are not important for them.

We aimed to disclose the statistic structure of the three variables – gender, learning strategies and factual computer literacy. Figure 2 reflects the graphic form of the structure. The graph of the three variables shows a very strong and specific effect of statistical interaction – the relation of the factual computer literacy and the clusters depending upon learning strategies. Figure 2 presents obvious gender effects: 1) computer literacy of female students is lower than that of male students in all clusters; 2) interactive learning is less characteristic for female students, who appear to prefer the other two learning strategies – dysfunctional and individual types of learning. As a consequence, the highest computer literacy level of male students can be reasonably related to interactive learning in a group, of female students – to more individual learning.
A person’s interaction with a computer through the scheme “human – machine” is actually an interactive process. Practice has shown that it is much easier to master any unknown computer operation with the help of an experienced specialist who immediately demonstrates how and what to do, with the help of interactive learning with educational media. It appears that studying a voluminous manual on computers and learning from one’s own mistakes and trials is usually less effective and attractive.

**Conclusions**

The research data has shown that the usage of a cluster analysis method, searching for statistical types of students’ population by the variation of their learning strategies, has served its purpose. During the research the factually existing statistical types of students by their learning strategies were revealed; students oriented towards individual learning, dysfunctional learning and interactive learning were identified and described, and the relation with their factual computer literacy was also determined. The highest level of computer literacy can reasonably be related to interactive learning in a group.

Qualitative description of “pure” statistical groups, depending on the expression of features and the determination of these groups by percentage in the general population, is essential information with which the process of formation of computer literacy should be optimized and promoted. While selecting the already existing and/or developing new educational computer literacy strategies and methods, and preparing textbooks and media, we should focus not on abstract “faceless” learners, but on very definite and truly existing types of learners. In other words, the search technology for statistical types provides an opportunity to apply such classical and highly relevant didactical approaches as learning differentiation and learning individualization more effectively and efficiently.

**References**


Psycho-Semantics of Management Constructs: Expression of Democracy among Schoolteachers

Gintaras Šaparnis

Introduction: The scientific problem of the research

The background of the empiric research was an anonymous postal survey of 289 Lithuanian school teachers and 187 school managers, in the form of an open ended questionnaire. The aim was to identify the most important (according to the respondents) problems relating to school management, the expression of democracy and authoritarianism in school management, the problems of self-governance in an organisation and school management development perspectives. This paper in particular presents data analysis of the answers provided by pedagogues to an open ended question. The question was as follows: Are there any manifestations of democracy in your school? If “yes” (or “sometimes”), in what way are these rudiments asserted in your school?

289 respondents provided 634 statements to the question. Using the method of qualitative (hermeneutic) content analysis, the empirical statements were generalized into 42 semantically homogeneous categories. The control procedure of the validity and inter-subjectivity of the categories are presented in the paper by G. Šaparnis and G. Merkys (2000a). Afterwards, quantitative data analysis was carried out. Using the method of descriptive statistics the categories were rated by the frequency with which they were referred to. With the help of cluster analysis taxonomic regularity of the categories was researched (Šaparnis, 2000b).

From the aspect of methodology the research is based on an empirical social research approach to a combined qualitative and quantitative research – triangulation (Denzin, 1970; Cohen & Manion, 1994; Bitinas, 1998; Charles, 1999; Mayring, 1988; Kardelis, 1997; Lamnek, 1993; Merkys, 1999).

The conceptual basis of the research was an attempted combination (congruency) of different theoretical traditions (nowadays referred to as classical). The following theories are implied: humanistic psychology, an approach of social psychology to an authoritarian personality, authoritarian social relationships and the theory of symbolic inter-actionism (Rogers, 1969; Maslow, 1971; Adorno, 1969; Oesterreich, 1974; Blumer, 1969).

Moreover, an important theoretical context of this research is the research on management (including education management) and organizational behavior (Jučevičienė, 1996; Jučevičius, 1996; Želvys, 1999; Kalvaitis, 1997; Večkinė, 1996; Targamadzė; 1996 and others). However, it should be admitted that the authors failed to find any evidence of diagnostic research systematically and
professionally carried out in Lithuania on education management. Research deficiency in this field is a significant aspect of this research problem.

For substantiation of the theoretical part of the research and data interpretation, a significant role was played by a particular branch of psychology – psycho-semantics (Sinchenko and Mescheriakov, 1996). One of its main concerns is research on what subjective implications individuals and social groups tend to attribute to verbal (lexical) stimuli. Reference to the analysis of psycho-semantic structures provided an opportunity to achieve substantial results in such fields as differential psychology, psycho-diagnostics and social attitudes (Osgood, 1959). In our particular research the role of the word-stimulus was played by a stimulating material formed on the basis of a lexical unit “democracy”, presented to the respondents in different problematic contexts on organization management.

The aim of the research was to disclose the psycho-semantics of the opinions held by comprehensive school educators on the expression of democracy in education management.

This aim was achieved using a non-standardized questionnaire composed of open-ended questions, and through combining the methods of qualitative and quantitative content analysis.

The process of management in a comprehensive school was the object of the research

The problem of any scientific research may be defined in the form of a question because it is a logical form of a scientific problem (Merkys, 1995). A scientific problem of our research is defined by a series of definite questions:

1. What is the rating law of subjective psycho-semantic categories which reflect the expression of democracy among school teachers?
2. What is the character of the taxonomies of psycho-semantic categories of the referred “topics” which empirically result from data rating?
3. What is the inner structure of empirically traced psycho-semantic units which reflect the expression of democracy?

Research results and discussion

Relying on the selected and proven scheme of statistical data processing, cluster analysis of the formed categories was carried out. This provided an opportunity to form the taxonomy of categories. The configuration of computerized dendograms and the data of standardized cluster distance scales show that it is most expedient to refer to a 3 cluster model (Tables 1, Table 2). Category rating data statistically may reasonably form 3 homogeneous groups (noted by the rating). It is symptomatic that one of the clusters consists of only 2 categories. These are the categories that outscore other categories by the frequency rating they noted.

A grounded qualitative interpretation of 3 groups (clusters) is given in Table 1.
Table 1. Qualitative interpretation of taxonomy results according to a 3 cluster model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group number in the dendrogram</th>
<th>Interpretation of the model of 3 groups (clusters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group 1</td>
<td>high rating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 2</td>
<td>medium rating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group 3</td>
<td>low rating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Rating of categories of teachers' opinions about the expression of democracy in the organization (N=289)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Noted frequency</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Group number by a 3 cluster model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It is permitted to express opinions, give suggestions</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majority of decisions are made collectively</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of schoolchildren's self-governance</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possibility to work independently and creatively</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of the school council independently and actively</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolchildren can express their opinions</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parents are involved in school life</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good, close community relations</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of teachers' trade union</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The aim is to educate independent individuals</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Good teacher-schoolchildren relations</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of election practice at school</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imitation of democracy</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Researches and opinion polls are carried out</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolerant school leaders</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opinions of majority are considered</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate control</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School work plans are discussed with teachers</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No barriers for qualification update</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupils' rights are discussed and acknowledged</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School – like an open community</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opinion of teacher majority can change leaders' decisions</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter-reliance</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers' personal matters are considered</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delegation of decisions and responsibilities</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolchildren plan and organise extra-curricula</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3: Noted frequency and percentage of group number by a 3 cluster model

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Noted frequency</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Group number by a 3 cluster model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Criticism of school leaders is normally accepted</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolchildren are allowed to choose extra-curricula activities</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information sharing</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolchildren's education is based on democratic principles</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teacher is a child's helpmate</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Too much democracy</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is possible to remove an &quot;intolerable&quot; teacher</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of informal groups is tolerated</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Democracy is discussed at sittings</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work is organised keeping to self-approved rules</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work load is discussed and allotted by teachers themselves</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification assessment commission</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daring communication with schoolchildren's parents</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schoolchildren are permitted to apply to school administration at any time</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No ignorance because of political beliefs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of school radio</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing of teaching experience</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From the aspect of interpretation the greatest attention in this context is paid to the categories characterized by the highest frequency with which they were noted. It is symptomatic that by the dimension of "democracy" top positions are taken by the categories of the same content (Table 3).

The main part in the structure of teachers’ conception about the expression of democracy at school is taken by the dimension of opinion expression (whether an opportunity to express it exists or not) and the dimension of collegiality.
Table 3. Examples of category statements that reflect the dimension of democracy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It is permitted to express opinions, give suggestions</td>
<td>Expression of one’s opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teachers can express their opinion on various questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Very often it is possible to express one’s opinion and suggest various things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is possible to express opinions and give suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majority of decisions are made collectively</td>
<td>Majority of decisions are made collectively, after discussions with teachers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Some matters often depend on teachers’ suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parents, teachers and pupils take part in decision making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urgent problems are solved collectively</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generally, the keyword "opinion" takes an exceptional position in the researched psycho-semantic structures and quite frequently appears in category formulations. Apart from the categories provided in Table 3, such categories as “Pupils can express their opinion”, which refer to the commented keyword are worth mentioning. If we formed a compound frequency rating of the categories based on the keyword "opinion" it would break all records in comparison with other categories. Naturally, psycho-semantic structures are not a purely speculative and subjective matter; they more or less reflect real (objective) social relations. At this point we may make a hypothetical assumption about empirically traced and proven regularity of criteria. In other words, it may be soundly claimed that the character of opinion expression in the school community is the main criterion which differentiates the prevailing management style in the organization. The traced regularity of criteria is significant from two perspectives – diagnostic (e.g., compiling standardized closed-type questionnaires on school management) and school management monitoring (e.g., granting leaders categories in management, etc.). The dialogue, which, inter alias, means a person’s ability to listen to and tolerate other opinions in social relations, is an essential indicator of an anti-authoritarian personality type and for an authoritarian personality is the basis to take psycho-corrective measures. In turn, speech (opinion) freedom, according to political sciences, is an attributive feature of democratic society.

Therefore, two circumstances, namely: 1) an exceptional position of the keyword “opinion” in the psycho-semantic structure of the surveyed teachers and 2) theoretical validity of the phenomenon of opinion expression (as a basic indicator) in social psychology, management and political sciences, allows an understanding of this point as the main criterion of a dominating management style in an organization. In other words, specificity of opinion expression in an organization is one of the most reliable criteria and diagnostic indicators with which to differentiate school management style.
Moreover, we could hypothetically claim that the stated fact is culturally specific, and especially relevant for the countries and cultures of the so called “new democracy.” It is possible to make an assumption that in societies with deeper democratic traditions, free expression of opinions is an unquestioned matter. Therefore, from the perspective of its differential potential, this criterion is not as relevant and significant as it may be for the countries of “new democracy” to which Lithuania is referred. It is no secret that most contemporary school leaders and teachers started their professional profiles in a system where the expression of non-conjuncture opinion was not only unwelcome but even risky. In the decades of assimilation of social mechanisms, an inadequate attitude towards public expression of an “unacceptable” or “different” opinion was formed. On the other hand, this stated fact reveals the potential for school management development based on appropriate and modern attitudes towards free expression of opinions in the school community.

From the perspective of school management development we would like to juxtapose the stated fact with other facts traced during the survey. It should be noted that while designing strategic visions of school management (Šaparnis, 2000a; Šaparnis et al., 2003) school leaders gave priority to “community and partnership development” and “intention to perfect”, whereas teachers preferred “improvement of school microclimate”, etc. It is obvious that if free expression of opinions in a school community is not guaranteed, the reality for strategic management visions and expectations of both, leaders and teachers will be very problematic. An assumption may be made that opinion expression guarantee is a systematic determinant in the managerial and social relations of an organisation. In other words, guaranteeing (or neglecting) the dimension under discussion makes a direct impact on a number of other significant management dimensions. Consequently, the noted congruency of the surveyed facts assuredly emphasizes an exceptional role of the character of opinion expression in organizational culture and modern effective management.

In this context other significant tendencies of democracy expression in school management are worth discussing; moreover, the results of the survey give a sound basis from which to do this.

A significant criterion which allows detection of a democratic management style and a type of social relations formed at school is functionality of active institutions within a school. It is shown in the formulation of corresponding categories and authentic statements given by the surveyed (Table 4).

The character of psycho-social relations and the social microclimate in an organization is also considered to be an important criterion. It is proved by such categories as: “Good, warm community relations”; and “Good teacher-pupils relations”, etc. Alongside the phenomenon of opinion expression discussed in this context, an important criterion is the dimensions reflecting psycho-semantics of “independence and initiative”. Examples of the corresponding categories are:
“Opportunity to work independently and creatively”; “No barriers for qualification update” and others.

Table 4. Examples of categories’ statements that reveal functionality of school’s active institutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Examples of statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of schoolchildren's self-governance</td>
<td>Schoolchildren's self-governance functions at school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In schoolchildren's self-governance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The board of monitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schoolchildren's Seimas (Parliament)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of school council independently and actively</td>
<td>Independent functioning of the school council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Functioning of the school council</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The school council functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The school council functions actively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functioning of teachers' trade union</td>
<td>Teachers’ trade union was set up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teachers’ trade union exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade union exists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Teachers’ trade-union functions actively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction of election system at school</td>
<td>The school committee is elected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>President’s elections (in the schoolchildren's council)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>School director's democratic elections (by secret vote)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Election of the school council</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With reference to the selected strategy of statistical data processing it was aimed to also detect, alongside the regularities of ratings and taxonomy categories, regularities of category structures as well. In order to disclose statistical links and to switch to a reduced number of primary variables factorial analysis was used. Prior to this, while analyzing the matrix of inversions, we eliminated categories which were irrelevant for factor analysis.

Factorization of categories gave acceptable results. 12 primary variables (categories) were reduced and generalized in the model of 5 factors (Table 5).

Statistical linkage of the majority of categories with factors and their inside grouping in terms of interpretation appeared to be theoretically significant in the factor model of democracy categories. It should be noted that rather high correlation of category ratings with the extracted factors were obtained. This is evident in the fluctuation limits of the correlation coefficient values ($0.42 \leq r \leq 0.85$). This shows that formed categories are appropriate since they meet the methodological norm of the construct validity commonly accepted in diagnostic researches.

Meaningful grouping of categories inside the factor should be considered. In the factor model of categories of democracy factors, F1 and F5 clearly reflect the institutions of democracy, factor F2 – psycho-social relations, factor F4 – the
dimension of freedom. A little more problematic is the interpretation of factor F3, consisting of variables reflecting meaningfully non-homogeneous dimensions.

Table 5. Factorial analysis results
(teachers’ opinions about the expression of democracy at school)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor number</th>
<th>Categories</th>
<th>Values of factor weights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F1</td>
<td>Functioning of schoolchildren's self-governance</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Functioning of school council independently and actively</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Functioning of teachers’ trade union</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F2</td>
<td>Good, warm community relations</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good teacher-pupil relations</td>
<td>0.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F3</td>
<td>The aim is to develop independent individuals</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parents are involved in school life</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Majority of decisions are made collectively</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4</td>
<td>Schoolchildren are permitted to express opinions, give suggestions</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Opportunity to work independently and creatively</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F5</td>
<td>Pupils can express their opinions</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction of election system at school</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Computer extracted factors explain 60.7 % of all factors

Conclusions and discussion

The main part in the structure of teachers’ conception about the expression of democracy at school is taken by the dimension of opinion expression (whether community members can express it) and the dimension of collegiality.

It is expedient to state hypothetically that the character of opinion expression dominant at school as an organization is the main criterion which differentiates the prevailing management style at school. From the diagnostic aspect this is the main indicator which allows the recognition of a concrete management type in factual school management reality.

It is possible to make an assumption that opinion expression guarantee in a school community is a systemic determinant of management and social relations in the organization. In other words, guarantee of the dimension under discussion has a direct impact on many other essential dimensions of management.

A hypothetical assumption may be formed that the discussed criterion of opinion expression is culturally specific, i.e. more relevant for the so called “new democracy” countries.

Alongside the phenomenon of opinion expression, a significant criterion which allows a more reliable differentiation of a democratic management style and type of social relations formed in the organization, is active functioning of school institutions (school council, trade unions, schoolchildren’s self-governance, etc.)
In the psycho-semantic structure of teachers' opinions (on the question of democracy expression in an organisation) a significant role is played by those categories which disclose expectations of creativity, independence and initiative, and of a favourable psychological and social climate.

References


The textbook as bridge or fire wall between practitioners and theorists in vocational training

Anna-Lena Göranson

Introduction

In vocational training students and teachers are faced with “theory” in the form of written-text based, often abstract information. Teachers and students are expected to read, critically study, question and reconstruct these texts into new knowledge of their own. The advantage with verbal articulation in vocational training is that an opportunity is provided to question, critically examine and discuss one’s own knowledge and one’s own action patterns. By verbalizing, systematizing and generalising around one’s own knowledge and placing it in relation to the knowledge of others, all practitioners can attain an increased awareness about how they do things, what they do, and why one way of acting can be better or worse than another in a given situation. My thesis (Göransson, 2004) describes how a group of firefighters, who consistently maintain that they are “practitioners and not theorists”, relate to language based knowledge and language based “knowledging” in their vocational training. This paper presents the main results of my research and how this study has influenced the textbook production at the Swedish Rescue Services Agency (SRSA) where I work as an editor.

Theoretical background and research method

Our social contexts are of crucial significance to what and how we read, write and learn. Wertsch (1997:15) uses the term sociocultural in order to understand “how mental action is situated in cultural, historical and institutional settings”. Researchers such as Cazden et al (1972), Heath (1983), Bruner (1986) and Säljö (2000) make it clear that explanations for linguistic behaviour should be searched for in the social sources of language, not amongst individuals or language systems as such. According to Vygotsky (1962) linguistic interaction is the fundamental condition for learning. But when the everyday language of the students encounters the logical-scientific paradigm (Bruner, 1986) at school, language can create problems. Accordingly students can require support, examples and models to be able to increase their linguistic repertoires and to take on new subjects.

Considering the significance of “languaging” for learning I find it urgent to examine how students who call themselves “practitioners and not theorists” and who primarily want to learn by physical practice, relate to various forms of verbal based learning; and try to understand what this “knowledging” implies for them. With the focus on the students as learning language users I searched for understanding of what was going on in the educational setting from a sociocultural perspective to learning and within the parameters of a didactic perspective (Uljens, 1997) from
external contexts to the actions of the students and teachers in the educational setting. The SRSA has four colleges where firefighters and fire brigade officers for the Swedish fire service are trained. I collected data at one of these colleges during 10 weeks of a 15 week problem-based firefighter training course. I carried out classroom and training field observations and 12 interviews with 6 of the students at the beginning and at the end of the course and 2 more interviews with the two most talkative students six months later.

I noted and analysed the communication in the educational setting with support from those aspects compiled by Dell Hymes (1986) to describe situation context and to understand text in context: Setting/Scene, Participants, Ends, Act sequence, Key, Instrumentalities, Norms and Genres. This means I noted the communication in the educational setting by focusing on where, who was communicating what with whom, with what aim and object, and in what way etc. I wanted to know how and about what, when and where, and in what way students and teachers talked, read, wrote and listened to each other, and how all this influenced learning in relation to the course objective. I wanted to find out what opportunities the linguistic tools that they used provide for uniting theory and practice in vocational training for firefighters.

Inspired by Kathleen McCormick (1994), who considers reading as a meeting between reader and text, I consider the learning process as a meeting between what I call the educational text and the students. By educational text I mean that which the students encounter in the educational setting in the form of teachers’ actions, teaching methods, textbooks etc. together with underlying factors such as curricular directives, educational ideologies etc. McCormick’s view is that reading and comprehension always occur within a collective, in a social and cultural space, and that reading is steered in different directions due to the varying features of the text, who is reading and in what context the reading is taking place. The readers create their own texts in relation to the author’s text, aided by the (general and literary) repertoires and strategies they have at their disposal while reading, and their underlying ideology. What McCormick calls matching, occurs when the repertoires of the text and the reader are in agreement and the reading occurs without problems. If the repertoires are not in agreement, mismatching occurs and the reader may give up reading. Tension occurs when the reader is sufficiently familiar with the text’s repertoire to be able to read and understand it, but disagrees with it or opposes it for various reasons. Where McCormick focuses on the reader’s literary ideology I focus on “culturally conditioned experiences, beliefs, knowledge and expectations” about language and language use, knowledge and learning and also about the fire service, which influence the behaviour of the actors in the studied educational setting:
Results

When the study was carried out one of the entry requirements for the firefighter training course was to have completed at least one year’s employment as a firefighter on a municipal fire brigade. As the experiences of the students function as active co-creators in the construction of knowledge I wanted to understand what the firefighters take with them into the educational setting and into the learning situation. I came to understand that the bonds between the individual firefighters and the job are strong. A firefighter’s identity is based on his professional role, of which they are very proud. They do like their job and feel a strong affinity with their watch, which they often describe as being like a family. There are many common personality traits among brigade members, for example the desire for challenges at work, physical strength, a competitive spirit, an interest in practical work, the desire to work in groups etc. I understood from the firefighters that they work in a
hierarchical, greedy organisation in which the brigade and the watch are of major significance to the individual firefighter’s socialization into the profession and his vocational role. Practical work knowledge is developed by doing, while simultaneously learning to use the group language. In that way one also becomes party to the attitudes and values that go with the language. Newly arrived firefighters learn, for example, to know their place, to listen and to be humble towards elder colleagues.

The firefighters recreate and reconstruct their work culture in practical actions and in informal discussions and stories of past incidents. They talk a lot and they know how to describe their many workplace experiences and also how to tell a good story and to back up or undermine a good story teller. But, a fact is that they seldom read or write at work. And they haven’t documented much of their work knowledge in writing, which means that the field’s other representatives, such as researchers, fire protection engineers and the pedagogues at the central administration of the SRSA, who have partly different verbal tools and also a more developed tradition of written-text to fall back on, articulate in writing what they think should be firefighter’s knowledge.

It’s obvious that different practices with different attitudes and tools for acting meet in the educational setting, which in itself is a situated practice with its own rules for interaction, which means for example that reading was considered as a natural activity in connection with learning. But when presenting his library findings in class (after two weeks of self study) one firefighter articulates the gap between his own everyday language (in italics) and the “logical-scientific paradigm” of the textbook in this way:

Firefighter 3: Fire. A rapid often uncontrolled oxidation process, the result of which is the development of heat and light of varying intensity, I’ve written there. And of course, the principal qualities of a fire I’ve mentioned a little as well. A flammable liquid vaporizes and the pyrolitic gaseous fuel, created during vaporization, consists of various…reacts with oxygen and forms products of combustion, such as carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide and water and a little of that stuff. That’s what I’ve mentioned… I’ve written a short story of how fire spreads, or of a fire’s progress then…

Many of these students want, and need, reading support. Many of them want to be told what they are expected to do with the information they get. They want their teachers to prepare for their reading by going through the textbook. They appreciate illustrations. Many students told me that a picture says more than a 1000 words. They are good at reading pictures both in textbooks and in their work place reality:

ALG: You mean firefighters remember situations as pictures?
Firefighter 5: Yes, I think so. That’s the way you learn. I mean, to be a firefighter, that means life long learning, so to speak… and then you get used to take things in that way. You remember what it looked like, what happened there. It is very important to have that ability.
The firefighters’ creation of meaning is multimodal. They articulate facts, skills, understanding and familiarity in words and body language. They “read” emergency situations with all their senses. They inspect the colour of the smoke because they know this can tell them about the various contents and how to proceed. They search for people in smoke-filled rooms where it is not possible to see with one’s eyes, but where it is possible with one’s arms and legs. They also willingly exchange examples, tips and advice with each other verbally.

I found a great discrepancy between the activities, participation and engagement at the different learning scenes. When the setting changed the students changed and so did the communication and the atmosphere. But here was a great change over time. At the beginning of the course all the interviewed firefighters explained that they were prepared to read and write as the course demanded. But having expressed joint ownership and a will to participate in the knowledging with their own contributions, they backed out and at the end of the course rejected large sections of the educational text as something that belonged to others:

Firefighter 1: Maybe you’ve been out on the training ground and trained and worked like hell and extinguished fires and been all in a sweat and come home and had a shower… Then you don’t want to sit down and read a book, do you? But that’s what they want us to do here.

The clearest example of mismatching was the problem based learning which the students understood to be working-group meetings and reading and writing. The firefighters were not familiar with and had not previously encountered the method and several of them were “rusty” when it came to reading and writing. Confusion, despair and irritation were all mixed together when the students had to formulate study questions in writing, search for information in the library and report on the knowledge in compendium form. The firefighters felt that “theory” took up too much time in relation to the practical exercises, and they saw much of the library and classroom work as a waste of time. They can hardly be said to have lived up to the role as active, knowledge-seeking, responsible PBL students. They displayed no desire for deeper theoretical study; instead they limited themselves and searched only for functional knowledge that they could use in practical situations:

Firefighter 6: We are firefighters. I think we get more theoretical knowledge here than we actually need. What we need is basic: practice, practice, practice.

Several less experienced firefighters digested most of the indoor lessons in silence, for example because they felt inferior to the more experienced ones and felt that they had nothing to add to the lesson, but probably also because they had learned at the fire station to be humble, quiet and listen to their elder colleagues. On the other hand, outside the classroom and during the whole learning period there was an uninterrupted informal dialogue between the students with a great amount of exchange of information and experience. Quite often these discussions took the form of lively stories about various incidents the firefighters had been involved in. A few times this also happened in the classroom and then the atmosphere changed:
Firefighter 6: You noticed that in the classroom, didn’t you? When someone with
experience tells us something then you wake up and listen. Then you learn. And vice
versa, when someone without practical experience talks about something.…. 

The firefighters expressed a common point of view about how and what they wanted
to learn: They wanted to learn from professionals who could provide them with
“real” knowledge, insight and experience:

ALG: You have said that many times now.
Firefighter 5: What?
ALG: That you want experienced firefighters as teachers.
FF: Yes. We do talk about that. That’s the problem here. There is no firm link with
reality. I mean if you have a class with students who will become dentists and learn
how to drill a hole in a tooth, then you don’t ask a helicopter pilot to teach them that,
do you?

Practical training was appreciated. Increased reference to fire and practical
knowledge, increased engagement in learning. Already in the garage when preparing
for an exercise on the training ground there was a good atmosphere. The firefighters
moved faster, talked more and there was a feeling of expectation in the air. After
common emergency response exercises the different groups often had lively
discussions with their instructors about what they had done, how it went, and how
one possibly ought to have acted. This common reflection in direct connection to a
joint incident/experience was felt to be meaningful.

**Discussion**

These attitudes, expressed by the firefighters in words and actions, were partly
explained by Donald Schön 20 years ago. According to Schön (1983, 1987)
professional knowledge is part of a collective knowledge system in which ambitions,
language, value systems and much more are shared. Schön says that a skilled
practitioner does not apply general theories or general rules in his actions, but
instead has access to a repertoire of examples, pictures, interpretations and actions
that he has adopted from his own working community or has access to via his own
experience.

I think that a constructive meeting between educational text and a work culture
requires that the students display openness towards those who want to convey
knowledge; but also that the educational institution in question is sensitive to and
makes use of the students’ action patterns, attitudes and outlooks. This suggestion
also applies to language. Here knowledge was silenced when the students were
adapting to each other and to the prevailing power structures. The firefighters in my
study also silenced the knowledge of the fire protection engineers and the
educationalists by rejecting it. The firefighters looked for tried and tested “recipes”
to follow. But at the same time they maintained that every work situation is unique
and that theory and reality seldom tally. This is without doubt the dilemma of every
practitioner. If a theory is to prescribe exactly what is to be done then a large
number of factors must be fixed, stable, invariant and unalterable. This is never the case in an emergency call out and it is never the case in a class room.

The realization of the intentions of the educational text had required a lot of work and support from the teachers. The study implies the need for teachers to be able to cope with the linguistic difficulties that might occur in the classroom when it comes to increasing the student’s repertoires with learning from written and abstract texts, to motivate this kind of learning and to scaffold the students by acting as good models for developing language use. This means to me that teachers must reflect on questions like: What does it mean to search for knowledge? What does it mean to read, write, talk and listen in various contexts? What does this mean to me and my students here and now? To listen to and challenge the person learning is important both on an individual and collective level. The group has a huge influence on the individual’s creation of meaning. This means that the teacher not only needs to find and operate in the individual’s zone of proximal development, but also needs to find and operate in every student group’s collective development zone.

A sociocultural perspective allows us to combine physical and mental actions and see the teacher’s most important task as facilitating creative understanding by creating a good breeding-ground for both verbal and non-verbal interplay in educational settings. Scaffolding is not a technique to break down and simplify tasks, but rather a subtle interplay that builds on mutual understanding between the various actors in the educational setting. These students were familiar with and appreciated narratives. I am convinced that their work related narratives can function as a bridge between unique incidents and generalized knowledge, between everyday language and abstraction. It can allow practice and theory to meet and pave the way for a developed languaging in which the students can raise their experiences to a common general level with the help of an analytic teacher.

Dialogue, reflection and critical thinking require a breeding-ground and stimulation. I believe that one reason for the rejection behaviour is the fact that neither the fire service nor the educational setting at the time of the study was a natural place of growth for these skills. There was no living reading, writing, analysing, critical examining tradition to grow into, and the majority of the teachers had no pedagogic tools to support the students in a developed written-text based languaging. But some teachers, even some “helicopter pilots” did succeed in stimulating languaging and learning. These teachers took the working situation of the fire fighters as the point of departure for their lessons and created constructive tension in the learning space. Observing such lessons I noted that the atmosphere changed in the classroom and that the students became active and engaged in accordance with the acting of the teachers and the possibilities they created. During such lessons the firefighters used their verbal tools with both engagement and skill. If they were afforded more such opportunities to grow into a functioning verbalised educational practice and in addition were supported in an active reflection of their own study, there would have arisen, I believe, several more fruitful transactions in the educational setting.
Textbooks for firefighters

Study texts should, regardless of form, genre or mode, convey new experiences and insight. Both experience based examples and scientific theories play an important role for learning. But for constructive tension to come about requires that the reader has the option of placing earlier experiences in relation to the new ones. If the firefighters can match the text to their own work experiences then there is a reduced risk that they will reject the text.

As an editor I want to build bridges between theory and practice. I want to make books which create a good breeding ground for learning, by meeting, engaging and challenging the readers. I want to make books which create constructive tension between earlier experience and new knowledge and thus let the firefighters observe their workplace reality with “new eyes” and see more than they did before in unique situations. I want to stimulate them to reflect on their own knowledge and also on the knowledge of others.

Reading and understanding don’t depend on linguistic capability only, but also on the readers’ attitudes and feelings towards the text. Abstract texts, written by people who are felt to belong to “the others” may hamper reading. Reading is facilitated if the text is related to ones own culture and if the reader is familiar with the content. Reading is also facilitated if the reader feels that the text is interesting and if the reading task is felt to be meaningful for one’s future (e.g. Abu-Rabia, 1996, 1998a, 1998b). To me as an editor it is important to find “the contact zone” between the author and the reader. The fact that the firefighters belong to an oral culture and their identification with the profession makes me work with narratives and interesting examples from real emergency call outs and other work related situations together with reflections on what happened, and why. The students’ appreciation of practical experience and skill make me introduce the authors, with photos, as reliable with experience from the field, not only from schools or books. The firefighters expressed a preference for textbooks with a clear layout and without compact tracts of text. I use many photos in which they can recognize their own workplace culture, and illustrations which make them see what the author wants to tell them. I have watched these students handle a book and I know that they look at the pictures first. If they find them interesting, they read the captions, and if they are still interested they may read the text near the pictures. This means that they must find a book that looks so interesting that they grasp it and open it. Then the book must not frighten or bore them.

Book design and layout can invite a reader in, but to maintain the reader’s attention, there requires something else. A concentrated nominal style, with lack of clear connections between ideas and events, does not promote a deeper understanding (cf. Beck et al., 1995; Reichenberg, 2000 and her article in this volume). I ask the authors to use their “voice”, to come closer and talk to the reader, provide realistic descriptions and examples, set knowledge generating questions, explain, give reasons, narrate with active verbs, use the reader’s terminology or carefully explain
their own etc. I work with short introductions and summaries and let important information also appear in “fact boxes” which are easy to find on the pages. Theoretical sections with formulas and equations are often put on coloured background signifying a different way of describing firefighters reality.

But still, the experience-potential that is contained in the text will not transfer to the reader automatically. What matters is not the textbook itself, but what the teacher does with it in the classroom (cf. Horsley, 2002). The teachers in my study had been told to remain in the background and not to interfere when the students were “searching for knowledge”. They did not introduce any textbooks and they did not demand the students to read special chapters in special books. Of course this influenced the students’ reading behaviour. I tell the teachers I meet that textbooks need mediators. I encourage them to read together with the students, to show them books and to demand that the students read them. I encourage them to help the students reflect on the texts. And I tell them to become reflective practitioners themselves and consider reading, meaning making and understanding as didactic who-what-how and why-questions including their own influence on the educational text and its influence on the student’s languaging.

References


Video Based Classroom Observation Systems for Examining the Use and Role of Textbooks and Teaching Materials in Learning

Mike Horsley and Richard Walker

Introduction

This paper will report on research using video based classroom observation systems to explore the use and role of teaching and learning resources in student learning. At the IARTEM conference in Bratislava (2003) Horsley and Walker presented a theoretical typology of the role of teaching and learning materials and textbooks in supporting learning. This typology has been used to evaluate video based classroom observation systems for observing the role of texts in learning, and as the basis for emerging research on video based classroom observation studies on the use of teaching and learning materials in teaching and learning. The paper will report on the methodological considerations of video based classroom observation and on the data generated by this approach.

Why study teaching and learning resources using video?

Video offers a promising alternative for studying teaching (Stigler, Gallimore & Hiebert, 2000). Using video analysis to study teaching and learning resources and learning has special advantages.

Video enables detailed examination of complex activities such as the use of teaching and learning materials from different points of view. Video preserves classroom use of teaching and learning materials, by many people with different kinds of expertise, making possible detailed descriptions of many classroom lessons. It increases the opportunity to develop powerful theoretical observational systems to analyze the use of resources in the classroom and learning situations.

Collecting samples of lessons provides information about teaching and learning materials across a range of conditions, classes subjects that can be then subject to analysis. As the Japanese lesson study approach highlights it is important to know what actual teaching looks like and how the use of teaching and learning materials are used, on average, so that national discussions can focus on how teaching materials are being used and mediated by students and teachers.

‘Collection of data by video also presents many challenges such as ensuring that standardized filming procedures are used in all countries; determining what information to extract from the classroom events recorded on the tape and how to quantify the information so that it can be analyzed in a meaningful way; and investing sufficient time and expertise to develop codes to describe the data and to train coders so that the data are reliable’ (Hollingworth, 2003).
Classroom observation systems have become more popular in Australia as a result of the Australian Federal Government’s Australian Government Quality Teaching Project. This project based on action research and practitioner inquiry has encouraged many teachers to observe each other’s teaching and in some cases video it for later analysis. As well, some of the Australian states’ Departments of Education have developed video coding systems based largely on the work of Newman and Zeichner (NSW DET 2003). These systems are usually termed quality teaching.

Internationally the efficacy of studying teaching and learning resources using video can be identified by following the results of the 1999 TIMMS video study and exploring its conclusions about teaching and learning resources. A clear result of the videoed lessons was that mathematics teachers in different countries mediated their use of textbooks and teaching and learning resources in different ways, despite the fact that much of the text material was similar. Differences in the textbooks of the countries participating were also researched. This paper presents classroom observational methodology for exploring the role of teaching and learning resources in teaching. It presents an observational system that has evolved to take into account the mediation of teaching and learning resources by teachers and the role of teaching and learning materials in the Zone of Proximal Development (ZPD). An original observational system has been modified to include sociocultural explanations of learning.

**Major Findings of Australian TIMMS Video Study**

Australian researchers in mathematics education (Hollingworth, 2003) analyzed the Australian video materials from the 1999 TIMMS study. As in other countries in the TIMMS study, at least 90 per cent of lessons made use of a textbook or worksheet of some kind. Although the study did analyze the teaching and learning resources used, textbook researchers using a sociocultural approach to the use of learning tools such as teaching and learning resources could have realized additional data and insights. Accordingly, an improved classroom video observational system based on a sociocultural approach to the use of learning materials in teaching and learning was developed.

**Sociocultural theories and textbook pedagogy**

Changing conceptions of the nature and role of textbooks are very much in accord with sociocultural analyses of textbooks and their use by teachers. The changing conception of textbooks, as indicated in Table 1, is very much related to changing views and theories concerning the nature of student learning. When, under the influence of behaviourist theories, learning was considered to involve the acquisition of knowledge textbooks were primarily vehicles for transmitting knowledge and therefore focused on the provision of information and congruent activities. Teachers and textbooks were the knowledge authorities and textbooks structured programs of learning for both teachers and students. As learning came to be conceptualized as knowledge construction in constructivist theories, textbooks were
increasingly conceptualised as providing opportunities for students to construct understanding through the provision of multiple knowledge sources; multiple sources provided parallel narratives involving written text and illustrations and allowed students to develop their own understandings. Textbooks also increasingly provided students with activities for learning, reflecting constructivist views of the active nature of learning.

**Table 1 Changing conceptions of textbooks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roles</th>
<th>Transmission</th>
<th>Constructivist</th>
<th>Sociocultural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaching and learning</td>
<td>Source of information</td>
<td>Activity and inquiry source</td>
<td>Scaffolds learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>materials e.g. textbooks</td>
<td>Basis of transmission</td>
<td>Provision of multiple sources</td>
<td>Enculturates students into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Knowledge authority</td>
<td>for students</td>
<td>disciplinary knowledge and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structure of a teaching and</td>
<td>student knowledge construction</td>
<td>practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>learning program</td>
<td>Multiple sources for</td>
<td>Source of inquiry activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>teacher selection</td>
<td>Basis of explicit teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>Passive recipient of</td>
<td>Active agent in text inquiry</td>
<td>Uses text in collaboration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information provided</td>
<td>activities</td>
<td>with other students,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in teaching and learning</td>
<td></td>
<td>Engages in authentic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>materials and by teacher</td>
<td></td>
<td>activities of disciplinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>communities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teacher</td>
<td>Authority in knowledge domain.</td>
<td>Creator of environments</td>
<td>Collaborative participant in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dissemination of appropriate</td>
<td>for active learning and</td>
<td>enculturation process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>inquiry.</td>
<td>Uses text to create</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>intersubjectivity, establish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>common student goals,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identifies and utilises texts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to create ZPD for students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Uses materials to enculturate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>students into key disciplinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>understandings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sociocultural theories increasingly come to dominate understandings of the nature of learning, and as sociocultural analyses of textbooks become more prominent. Textbooks are likely to increasingly be seen as enculturating students into disciplinary knowledge and practices, as the basis of scaffolded learning experiences and explicit teaching, and as the basis for collaborative student activity. Table 1 indicates the roles of teachers and students have also changed as theories of learning have changed.
Incorporating sociocultural approaches to learning into the The TEXTOR Video Observational Methodology

The TEXTOR (textbook observational record) was first developed by Horsley & Laws (1993) for use in classroom observational studies of textbook and resource use. The value of this observational device in classroom research has been acknowledged by Pingel (1999).

The TEXTOR schedule sought to identify the following aspects of textbook and learning material use:
- how students read the text
- whether pre-reading or activation and assessment of prior learning took place
- what tasks were set by the teacher
- the teachers purpose for using the texts in class
- how students used the text in the classroom
- the length of time texts were used in teaching and learning
- the use of texts for homework
- how the student gained access to texts
- the details and condition of the materials being used
- the length of time taken to issue and collect texts

Although this observational instrument was not developed according to a sociocultural theoretical framework, it does lend itself to such an analysis and interpretation. Observational schedule items such as student reading and pre-reading activities provide insights into teacher scaffolding of textbook activities and teaching and learning materials, while items concerning teacher set tasks and student learning activities provide an understanding of the mediated use of textbooks in the classroom. Other schedule items provide information on the availability, utility and appropriateness of texts used in the classroom.

Application of sociocultural components to the TEXTOR observation system allows other key aspects of the role of teaching and learning materials, modification of texts. Text mediation by teachers and the zone of proximal development to be explored. The TEXTOR observation system was modified to include
- teacher – student collaboration
- teacher modification of text and teaching and learning resources
- scaffolding
- student – student collaboration

The augmented TEXTOR is now used to study these key aspects of learning and teacher modification of teaching and learning resources.

Novice and expert teacher use of teaching and learning materials study was conducted using the adapted TEXTOR video based observational methodology.

A novice and expert teacher study on their comparative use and mediation of teaching and learning materials was conducted. The use of teaching and learning...


Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

267

materials was explored in 12 classroom lessons of an expert teacher, compared to 10 classroom lessons of seven novice teachers.

The study demonstrates that novice teachers spend considerable time and energy in locating, selecting and preparing text resources for their lessons. There were, however, many differences in the way these teachers used these resources when compared to the expert teacher. Although the novice teachers also scaffolded student use of text material and learning resources through various activities, they spent far less time in this scaffolding process than the expert teacher, and the nature of their scaffolding differed from that of the expert teacher. A significant proportion of the time novice teachers spent in scaffolding and pre-reading activities was spent in focusing student attention and explaining to students the purpose and structure of the lesson. There was less emphasis on alerting students to the underlying structure of the knowledge sources and teaching and learning materials, and significantly more emphasis on the topic and content that formed the outcomes of the lessons. The expert teacher’s scaffolding, on the other hand, was far more focused on using the materials to help students understand the knowledge to be learned. Novice teachers scaffolding was far more focused on the content itself.

These differences in scaffolding strategies also reflect differences in the materials selected, procured and photocopied for lessons by expert and novice teachers. The expert teacher, with greater pedagogic experience and knowledge, chose teaching and learning material that best represented disciplinary understandings and which met the learning needs of her students; often these consisted of multiple sources of knowledge and were presented in collage format. She rarely made use of activities or exercises from textbooks. While the novice teachers also made use of multiple sources from texts, they made much greater use of textbook activities, exercises, problems or questions. This reflected their more limited pedagogical experience and knowledge. The expert teacher, on the other hand, had her personal fund of activities and exercises which she could draw upon as needed.

There were also significant differences in the use made of textbooks and learning resources by expert and novice teachers. Novice teaching strategies often featured students working individually to complete activities and tasks while the expert teachers’ teaching focussed on collaborative and group use of texts and learning resources. In novice teacher classrooms there was far less emphasis on teaching and learning strategies that scaffolded and unpacked the teaching and learning materials for students, far less time was spent on teaching students to deconstruct the literary and structural aspects of knowledge sources, and far less collaboration and joint construction of meaning took place between the teacher and the students and amongst students themselves.

From the perspective of a sociocultural analysis of expert and novice teacher use of textbooks, it is clear that novice teachers were much less concerned with using texts and learning resources to enculturate students into the academic disciplines taught. While the expert teacher used text material to provide students with essential disciplinary knowledge, including multiple knowledge sources, novice teachers
mostly used texts and learning resources as sources of activities and exercises for students. Novice teachers provided students with much less scaffolding than expert the expert teacher, and the nature of this scaffolding differed in important ways. Novice teachers were also much less likely to use collaborative teaching and learning approaches than the expert teacher, and they were much more likely to have students working individually and unassisted in their classes. This suggests that novice teachers were much less likely to create zones of proximal development for their students so that their students were much more likely to be working in the zone of actual development.

References


Review and Analysis of Research and Initiatives on Curricular Materials on Honduras

Jesús Rodríguez Rodríguez

Introduction

The purpose of this paper is to present some reflections regarding the programmes & research on curricular materials in the Honduran context. In our opinion and considering the recent work on the subject, this document addresses the urgent need to help systematise the policies and activities carried out in Honduras regarding curricular materials. In general terms this work is the result of an invitation by the National University of Honduras to work on issues related to curricular materials and I took advantage of that to get an overview of the situation of curricular materials in Honduras.

The elaboration of this paper involved a series of activities. First of all, a review of articles and research on curricular materials. Secondly, the experience of collaborating with teachers at the Teaching University and at the National University of Honduras, as well as lecturing in Tegucigalpa and in San Pedro Sula. Special mention should be given to the contribution of the interviews and visits to a variety of institutions and schools; most notably those with directors of the Ministry of Education, and schools in the urban and rural areas of Tegucigalpa, Progreso, Tela, Ceiba, Trujillo, the Bahía Islands, Rincón Del Buey, San Antonio Tabesco, and La Laguna among others. I must also mention the interesting conversations with Spanish volunteer teachers in the region of Copan Ruinas.

Main Initiatives, Programmes and Research Regarding Printed Curricular Materials

Initiatives and Programmes

Among the main Initiatives and programmes carried out in Honduras, we would like to point out those that are a part of International aid policies aimed at promoting literacy and the development of appropriate strategies. We would also like to mention those programmes which have been run by the national government. From these, those we considered to be most representative were selected based on how widespread the programme was and on the availability of publications analysing the programme, seeing as in Honduras it is not easy to find centralised information systems or databases on the topic.
1. UNESCO/Germany Project, 507/RUA/11, “Elaboration of Texts and Reading Materials for a Basic Education within Central America and Panama”

This initiative is directed toward aiding countries in the sub-region by improving the skills of those responsible for planning, preparing, and elaborating texts and reading material, exchanging field experiences, promoting reading and a Sub-Regional Network of co-operation for elaborating and producing texts and reading material for a primary education.

The aim is to contribute to The Educational Project in Latin America and the Caribbean, as well as the commitments adopted under The World-wide Declaration For All and the corresponding framework for action to satisfy learning needs. Through this Project, it was sought to make materials available to the producers and distributors of school texts that would act as “Self-training Modules”, in such a way that they could become tools for fostering skills and activities associated to improving the quality of school texts.

2. First National Fair on Scholastic & Didactic Materials

In Project AID5220273 “The Efficiency of Primary Education” Component number 2, which is entitled “Enabling In-service Teachers”, establishes that the areas of enabling for Primary School Teachers shall be the following: optimising teaching techniques, methodological & scientific capabilities, community participation and the use of school texts.

In response to what the Project establishes in this component, its implementation team (The Centre for Updating Teaching) undertook a study on the enabling requirements for in-service teachers regarding technical-methodological aspects. They concluded that one of the factors explaining poor academic performance is the scarcity of didactical material available in schools. The materials that are used are sometimes elaborated by the teachers themselves by drawing on resources from the Community or materials usually purchased at high cost in local shops.

3. Materials for Adults

In 1981 the government of Honduras through its Ministry of Public Education and the United Nations agreed to put into place at the Francisco Morazón Teaching College a “Project for Education in Populations” for the school and extra-curricular levels. The section on adult education lead to the production of the following: a manual for the education of new readers and 13 didactic guides for the accelerated primary education of adults.

4. Programmes developed in Indigenous Communities

A large part of the Honduran population belongs to indigenous communities. There are currently a number of projects and programmes in place which are aimed at recovering the culture of these ethnic groups, however, some of these projects focus only on the process of production, analysis, and selection of materials. Nevertheless,
the daily reality of indigenous peoples, their problems, and their culture are rarely reflected in national textbooks or other curricular materials.

Research

We now go on to describe several of the most significant research studies carried out in Honduras focusing on analysis and evaluation of curricular materials in this context.

1. Primary Education Efficiency Project (PEEP)

The main objectives of this program includes the development of educational material such as School texts and the enabling and updating of teachers regarding correct usage. Moreover, this project has set up a practical educational research component for the achievement of its practical goals. The purpose of the study was to provide the Education Ministry with policy options regarding professional development activities for Honduran primary school teachers.

2. The Availability, use and quality of didactic materials and their relation to school performance

One of the main objectives of our work was to determine the availability of didactic materials in Honduran primary schools and ascertain their use in teaching-learning practices. This Project was undertaken by The Unit for Measurement of Educational Quality (UMCE) of the Francisco Morazán National Teaching University (PROMEB) as a part of The Project of Basic Educational Improvement sponsored by the Secretariat of Education. Out of the 20 conclusions presented by this study, we have selected the following:

Textbooks are the principal didactical material available to Honduran primary schools, and there are probably two reasons for this. The first is related to the methodology used in classrooms and the other is that official textbooks are never missing in state educational institutions because they have been supplied by the government in appreciable quantities, despite the scarcity of other books, notebooks, teacher's guides, and booklets.

Although our analysis detected a general lack of so-called "other didactic materials", more of these materials and a wider variety of resources are available in urban schools.

Most of the educational mediating elements for classrooms have been provided by either school teachers, or pupils and teachers.

Many researchers have suggested that because of the scarcity of resources in most Latin American education systems, textbooks should play a primary role in learning. Therefore, the application of study results regarding textbook design principals may significantly increase the efficacy of educators, textbooks and students.
Main Problems Related to Curricular Materials in the Honduran Context

Teachers Absenteeism. One of the basic problems with respect to teachers is their lack of consistency in attending class. Among the reasons that have an influence on this problem we would like to point out the following: low wages, lack of incentives, scarce training, and lack of attendance control by the government. Given this background, textbooks provide some sense to the activities that teachers are supposed to carry out. These materials are used as a type of “safety measure” against potential problems among members of the educational community, in such a way that the preparation of lessons and planned activities is “facilitated”.

The Condition of Schools. It is difficult to imagine that great improvements in the use of Curricular Material in Honduras are possible when a visit to schools in that country reveals a lack of (or even potential for) libraries, special purpose rooms, personnel qualified to advise on the selection process, and meeting rooms. This situation is even more desperate in rural schools. It is common to find schools without desks, without tables on which to place resources, and without furniture in which to store materials. It seems utopian to think of having electricity for a projector or computer when many communities do not even have drinking water.

Lack of school budgets for the acquisition of Curricular Materials. The lack of a clear awareness of the need to think about and discuss the role of materials in the curriculum leads to the present situation in which concern for materials basically occurs only at the time of making decisions in the classroom. On their own, teachers are "expected" to give "meaning" to their materials in the educational context, and use those that they consider most appropriate, or, instead, limit their activities to the specifications in the materials provided by the government. Specific mention and measures concerning curricular materials are rarely present in school educational and curriculum plans. Similarly, school budgets -that are generally quite small- rarely mention a specific allocation for purchasing such materials.

Materials deficit both in quantity and in quality. There is no doubt that in certain school contexts in Honduras - such as indigenous populations- teachers and pupils lack even minimal materials. This means that students have to worry about sharing materials with their classmates.

It is pitiful to witness, as we did on several visits to villages, how students had to return books at the end of the school year and how many times they were penalised for dirtying them at home. It is hard to maintain materials in good condition when homes often do not have electricity, running water, or even a table and when the same space is often used as a kitchen, bedroom and reading room.

In addition, teachers are responsible for how the students use the textbooks. This fact may seem irrelevant, but it commonly affects the type of activities that teachers and students carry out with materials.
Improvised Publication. One of the main problems detected in Honduras involves the publishing process. Thus, some of the principal International initiatives that are being undertaken in this country involving Curricular Materials focus on the pedagogical training of current and future publishers of educational materials; for example the UNESCO/Germany's Project (1994)

The process of editing and publishing educational materials requires efficient management and co-ordination so as to produce materials with an acceptable level of quality in terms of illustrations, design and so on. Many developing countries lack the resources required to produce and distribute the textbooks that are needed. Furthermore, it seems that measures have not yet been taken to correct this situation. According to Altbach (1983, 331), “Good textbooks require planning, preparation, financing, testing and distribution; they require great quantities of paper, good printing presses and success depends on the co-ordination of economic, government, publishing and printing resources.”

Lack of Database on Materials. This is a problem common to many educational systems, and it is especially serious in a country like Honduras. Therefore, it is necessary to establish which published materials actually exist in the country and which are available in the various regions and schools. Currently, schoolteachers are unaware of a large part of the publications adapted to the indigenous context which could be useful for teachers and students of these regions in their teaching/learning processes.

Finally, other problems regarding curricular materials affecting this country and which appear in the study by Pearce (1983) include the fact that parents do not have sufficient economic resources to buy books and that this has a terrible affect on school attendance. Also, numerous countries have come up against obstacles and resistance when starting to use their national languages in education instead of old colonial languages. There is also a lack of competent translators and services for their training. The estimated durability of books from a physical and pedagogical point of view is another important concern because it has an influence on the financing of publishers as well as on the purchase of educational books, especially in developing countries which do not tend to have experience in the matter. School publishers run into great difficulties to establish realistic timeframes and the decentralized stock of books often increases cost and worsens supervision problems, but improves the availability for book sellers.

Recommendations and Researched Proposals

Recommendations

For the purpose of guaranteeing minimum standards of quality in the process of analysis, selection, and utilisation of printed curricular materials in Honduras, we propose a number of indispensable recommendations.
An interdisciplinary Committee is needed to review textbooks and guarantee that each area receives an appropriate and equal treatment.

State policies should be defined regarding the production of curricular materials in order to avoid arbitrary production without including minimum contents.

A unit should be set up within the Ministry of Culture for the purpose of controlling those materials produced by educational institutions in order to guarantee that they meet minimum standards of quality.

The activities involving curricular materials should be professionalized.

One of the greatest challenges in Honduras is to professionalize teaching activities involving curricular materials. This is surely not unrelated to other factors mentioned in this paper. The present proposal should make teachers more aware of the importance that curricular resources have on the educational process and of their ideological power. We hope that this leads to more collaborative research activities regarding materials.

Use of “Evaluation Guides”. We consider the distribution of evaluation guides to be indispensable. Moreover, activities should be included in training courses to show teachers how to use materials adequately.

Materials should address the indigenous diversity of the country. Many of the teachers that go to indigenous communities lack the economical resources to survive there. Thus, it is a common experience that the community itself has to provide teachers with food and shelter. In many cases a structured community organisation is necessary for their "upkeep". In this setting, teachers find themselves without practically any materials at all, and the materials that they may have do not address the indigenous reality they are immersed in\(^1\).

Improving the Library System. Although it may seem utopian and difficult to carry out, it would be advantageous to provide the country with an effective library system that would allow school children to access a minimum amount of resources and materials. It should be remembered that one of the most serious deficiencies is that educators and students lack varied materials. The existing libraries are generally not technically or administratively in contact with each other, and each one follows its own criteria. The staff that work in these libraries do not present any specific training. In these circumstances, users receive a poor quality of services.

Proposals for Research

Having reviewed some of the main problems and difficulties associated to curricular materials in Honduras, we go on to describe areas of research which in our opinion could be useful for orientating political, administrative, and educational decisions.

\(^1\) I had the opportunity to witness this fact during a visit to an indigenous community where a teaching intern on his first day meeting the community, expressed his willingness to teach class in exchange for the upkeep offered by the community and a measly salary.
The need to analyse the use of materials in border areas. One of the main problems detected in Honduras is the constant “movement” of the political borders of the country. In recent years, Honduras has seen several changes in its borders. Teachers, parents, students, publishers, and so on live in the midst of border tension such that they are unsure about which materials should be used. The impression exists that using materials pertaining to the more prosperous country may bring along better training possibilities as well as the possibility of working in that country in the future. This can be deduced from the experience of educators teaching in these border regions.

Ideology transmitted by materials. A large part of the materials used in Honduras belong to the “First World”. These materials generally arrive under the pretext of “charity” seeking to relieve the lack of minimal resources. Nevertheless, it is usually the case that neither their content nor approach addresses the Honduran reality. Instead, these materials reflect a reality with meanings and values that are quite different from the context in which they are supposed to be used.

It is necessary to investigate the socialising effects of these materials and how they may be contributing to distorting the study of history in the areas where they are to be used.

The use that is made of these materials. Although a relatively wide range of bibliographical resources are currently available internationally on how teachers use materials (Area, 1991 and 1994; Borre, 1996; García, 1991; Mondedero, 1999; Paredes, 2000, among others), there are actually very few studies on the use of materials in Honduras. Although several studies have been carried out in this country on the use of materials in the classroom (Galo et al., 1994), we consider that there are still many questions to be answered in this area such as the following: How are materials used by indigenous peoples? What interaction occurs between materials pertaining to other cultural realities and materials produced for the Honduran reality? These and other questions are still unanswered and they require an analysis with the aim of understanding what is currently going on with materials.

Free textbooks. As a result of a variety of strategies, in recent years there have been a large number of promotional campaigns in Latin American countries involving so-called “free textbooks” or “free material”. It would be interesting to analyse how these materials are distributed, what types of material are offered for free, what contents and ideology they transmit, and so on. Likewise, it would be wise to at least be aware that, although this free material is sometimes presented as the “great salvation”, they may also bring along a series of problems affecting booksellers. As Pearce indicates, “…booksellers need capital to buy, and furnish shops, and to gather a stock of books. It is often difficult for them to obtain this capital, because banks are reluctant to extend loans when the stocks of books are the only collateral.” (1983, 357).
The need to compare the texts of the materials used in bilingual schools, state city schools, private city schools, and state rural schools. The general opinion of teachers is that there are clear differences in terms of quality and objectives.

Conclusions

The purpose of the present study has been to describe some of the principal problems facing curricular materials in Honduras. As we have previously mentioned, the initiatives in this area are basically limited to granting free textbooks, campaigns for the promotion of textbooks, and so on. Apart from the criticism we have made regarding the contents and structure of books available in this country, there is without doubt a critical scarcity of materials and economic resources allocated to the purchase of materials as well as of training activities for developing design and selection strategies.

We would like to end with some final reflections to orient future decisions on curricular materials:

- How can a child find "utility" in a printed material, when so many of them are forced for a variety of reasons to beg in the streets and do not even have enough time to attend class?
- How can an indigenous child enjoy reading a textbook at home when the only light available in the evening comes from the fire his mother has prepared to prepare food for an average of 6-7 children?
- How can teachers possibly purchase good books or participate in training activities when they have to work two or three shifts and maintain other jobs just to earn a living.

Perhaps many of these problems are well on their way to being solved, others may be on the right track and we hope that the rest will not have to wait too long. Our aim has been to at least express the doubts and concerns stemming from our work with these materials. It is likely that what is presented here is only the tip of the iceberg in so far as the situation and problems. In any case, it is our desire to delve deeper to discover the aspects that can contribute to improving the work with curricular materials.

References


Reading to learn from expository texts
Monica Reichenberg and Sten Gunnar Axelsson

Introduction
What Swedish pupils read and how they read change from elementary grades to secondary grades. In grades 1-2, narratives are mostly used to teach reading skills. In grade 3 the pupils are introduced to expository texts and from grade 4 there is an increasing emphasis on this text type. Expository texts differ from the narratives and place different demands on the reader in that narrative texts are personal and include such elements as theme, actors, plot, and conflict. Thus, the texts are often exciting and it is rather easy for the young reader to become engaged and identify herself with some of the actors. Expository texts present facts, opinions, problem-solution and are mostly impersonal. It is not that easy for the reader to feel engaged and involved (Lundberg, 1984).

Studies have demonstrated that many young readers – although they decode adequately well – have difficulties making meaning from expository texts (Skolverket, 2004). Having difficulties with a text can give the pupils the notion that they as poor readers are to blame. More seldom they seem to blame the author. Maybe it has not even occurred to them that behind the texts there is a fallible author. Unfortunately, the comprehension of expository texts has not been in focus for educational research in Sweden in recent years, although an increasing number of pupils seem to have difficulties dealing with the literacy demands placed on them (Skolverket, 2004). There is certainly a need for more research in order to understand how the pupils process expository texts and whether their reading comprehension could be improved.

Deposing the authority of the text
International research over twenty years has shown that instruction in comprehension can have beneficial effects on pupils’ comprehension. The instructions have taken several forms, e.g. talking about texts in the classroom: Instructional conversations (Goldenberg, 1993), Reciprocal teaching (Palincsar & Brown, 1984), Questioning the Author (QtA) (Beck et al., 1996). QtA is especially interesting because the text is viewed as the product of a human author who is potentially fallible. Armed with this view, pupils can view texts as less impersonal, authoritative, and incomprehensible, and realize that texts are open-ended and incomplete and that they, as readers, have to contribute something to complete it, for instance by asking the author hypothetical questions. QtA deals with the text through teacher-posed author-oriented queries, such as “What is the author trying to say” and “What do you think the author means by that?” The purpose of these queries is to assist pupils in their efforts to understand when they are reading a text.
for the first time, QtA takes place on line, reading segments of the text and discussing the ideas and events encountered. The teacher has segmented the text where the pupils may be expected to have difficulties. The pupils stop reading in this place and collaborative construction of meaning is performed by questioning the author. Stopping to discuss a text also allows readers to consider different alternatives. Questioning begins by eliciting what the author says and what that actually means and how it connects with other text ideas. Thus, QtA encourages collaborative discussions in which pupils are forced to deal with ideas in order to construct meaning. Wrestling with the text during reading gives pupils the opportunity to learn from one another, to question, and consider alternative possibilities, and to test their own ideas in a safe environment (Beck et al., 1996).

The aims
The overall aims of the present study were to investigate how teachers and pupils talk about expository texts in the classroom; and to investigate to what extent structured text talk (QtA) affect teachers’ and pupils’ talk about expository texts. The following more specific questions are focused on:

a) What kinds of questions do teachers regularly ask when reading expository texts in the classroom?
b) How do pupils regularly respond to these questions?
c) What strategies do the teachers regularly use to get the pupils to interact actively with the text when reading?
d) What possible effects can structured text talks have regarding teachers question types and strategies, pupils’ answers and interaction with the text?

Our main focus was on poor struggling readers. The QtA approach of segmenting the text and the idea of questioning the author was adopted. However, there are some differences between the present study and Beck et al. (1996). The pupils in the experimental groups were instructed to skim the text first, to get a general view of the material before the text was segmented. Furthermore, unlike Beck et al. the pupils read the texts in small groups.

This approach has been used in another study by Reichenberg (2005) with 17 year old students, but at that time without control groups.

Method
Participants
Six groups of pupils – four experimental groups and two control groups – participated in the present study. For practical reasons it was not possible to get four control groups\(^1\). The average age of the pupils was 10.3 years at the beginning of the

\(^1\) Since the study was performed in country schools the number of classes to choose from was limited.
study, and they attended grade 4. There were six pupils in each group – two good readers and four poor readers. Good readers were included to facilitate discussion and give the poor readers cognitive courage (Lundberg, 2005). The pupils were selected on the basis of a screening procedure including two tests of reading comprehension together with teacher estimation of the pupils attitude to reading, their ability to reflect and infer, and their propensity to superficial reading. The tests and the teachers’ ratings indicated that the poor readers had difficulties to understand what they read although they could decode adequately. The pupils attended four schools in the countryside in the Swedish county of Västra Götaland.  

Six teachers, four female and two male, also participated. The teachers were selected because they were interested, not because they were nominated as exemplary. Five of the teachers had long experience of teaching from 16–33 years. Only one of them, a teacher in the control group, had just 4 years of teaching experience. The names of the pupils and the teachers are fictional.

**Material and Procedure**

Data collection began with videotaping six regular lessons, one for each teacher in order to observe the teachers’ question types, strategies, pupils’ answers and interaction with the text. All teachers were instructed to talk with their pupils between 20–30 minutes about a text taken directly from a textbook. Since it was their first videotaped session, it seemed fair that the teachers had a text they felt comfortable with. The pupils had not read the text before.

After the regular lessons, the teachers in the experimental groups were invited to participate in seminars led by the senior investigator. In these seminars the regular lessons were analyzed. Furthermore, current reading research about reading comprehension, reading strategies, different question types, etc, was discussed. The teachers were also introduced to QtA. Between the seminars QtA was practised in the classroom before videotaping each experimental group a second time. Then there were seminars again where the teachers’ experiences of QtA were discussed before videotaping each experimental group a third time.

Each of the control groups continued with a second and a third videotaped regular lesson. In all 18 lessons were videotaped.

In the first QtA lesson the pupils read a text called “In the classroom” (281 words). The text dealt with pupils in a Swedish school at the beginning of the twentieth century. In the second QtA lesson, a text called “Plenty of jobs in industry and many new-born babies” (262 words), which dealt with how society changed during the fifties and sixties (Stark & Sköld, 2000), was read. The texts were chosen by the

---

2 The two tests were Ängelholmsprovet (Franzén, 1996) and SL 40 (Nielsen et al., 1997). Each pupil’s ability to identify the written word had been tested at the beginning of the term. According to ratings done by Sten Gunnar Axelsson, special education need coordinator, the poor readers were able to correctly identify the written word.
senior investigator from a textbook which were not used at the selected schools and the pupils had not had the opportunity to read within the subject area which the texts addressed. The teachers were introduced to the texts one week prior to videotaping. Characteristics of these texts were that they were relatively information dense with several gaps in them. There were also many infrequent words and concepts in the texts. Consequently, poor readers were expected to encounter difficulties in gaining a deeper understanding if they were to read the texts, by themselves silently in the classroom.

The teachers, including those in the control groups who read the same texts, were introduced to each text one week prior to the videotaping. All data was collected in the spring of 2005.

Results
First, the teachers’ question types and the pupils’ answers will be presented. Then, representative excerpts from the text talks illustrating the teachers’ strategies and the pupils’ interaction will be given.

Question types and pupils answers
From earlier research and experience (Reichenberg, 2005) four main questions and a few subcategories could be identified:

1) Factual, where the pupils just have to retrieve information from the text to be able to answer the teacher’s question, e.g. “Does the bat have a good eyesight?” Specific factual questions where the teachers encourage pupils to express themselves in their own words, e.g. “The segment you have just read aloud, what was it about?”

2) Check knowledge, where the teacher wants to check if the pupils know, for instance, the meaning of a word or if they have the necessary prior knowledge, e.g. “For how many years do you have to attend school?”

3) Open-ended, where there are several possible answers to the question and the answer is not to be found in the text, e.g. (Dysthe, 1996). Half-open questions are included here, e.g. “Is there anything in this passage that the author has omitted?”

4) Inference questions, where the pupils have to read between and beyond the lines to be able to answer the questions, e.g. “Why do you think the children had to finish school and start working?” (See Cain & Oakhill, 1999, for a further discussion of inferences).

“Question” here refers to any utterance by the teacher related to the act of questioning the pupils. Procedural questions, rhetorical questions and discourse maintenance questions, (e.g. giving turns, "Does anyone else have any suggestions?") and questions not related to the text were left aside. Repaired questions, i.e questions repeated or paraphrased, were coded as one (see also Janssen, 1996). The senior investigator categorized the teachers’ questions. To
determine reliability two independent raters got the different questions described according to the investigator’s definitions. However, the two raters were not allowed to see the investigator’s categorizations. In order to give the raters exactly the same information the definitions were written down. Then, independently of each other, the raters categorized the questions. There was a 96 per cent agreement between the investigator’s categorizations and the raters.

As can be seen from Figure 1, factual questions dominated during the regular lessons in the experimental groups. There were only two inference questions and one half-open question. Regarding the control groups the check knowledge questions and factual questions dominated. Both teachers asked one respectively two inference questions.

![Figure 1. Teachers question types. F (factual) SF (Specific factual) C (Check knowledge) OE (Open-ended) HO (Half-open) I (Inference)](image)

One tendency observed during the regular lessons in the experimental groups was that the teachers asked many questions where the pupils just had to answer with one word:

Teacher Berg: What do the cows on this special farm eat?
Henrik: They drink 100-150 litres a day.
Teacher Berg: What do you think they eat?
Henrik: Some hay and fodder.
Teacher Berg: Is there anyone else that knows what the cows eat?
Henrik: Oats.
Teacher Berg: Oats, yes.
Emma: Pellets.
Teacher Berg: What are pellets?

And so the text talks went on in the same manner and this was typical for all regular lessons. The same tendency could be found in the control groups.

The number of teacher questions increased during the QtA lessons (Figure 1). There was also a dramatical change regarding the question types. The number of purely factual questions had decreased. Instead, there was an increase in specific factual questions. There was also an increase in check knowledge questions, but contrary to the regular lessons the teachers checked not only the meanings of words but also if the pupils had the necessary prior knowledge. Almost half of the questions were inference- and half-open questions. Regarding the control groups the number of teacher questions decreased during the second and third regular lessons. The teachers asked no specific factual questions and few half-open questions. One of the teachers asked very few questions related to the text. He also had a tendency to answer the question he asked himself.

**Pupils’ answers**

From earlier research and experience (Reichenberg, 2005) five types of answers could be identified:

1. *Retrieved information* directly from the text, word by word
2. *Retrieved information* from the text but in the pupils’ own words
3. *Inferences*, i.e. read between and beyond the lines.
4. *Reflections*, includes commentaries about the text and pupil initiated questions, e.g. “Why were the schools in the countryside that small?”
5. *Questions* about the meaning of words

Repaired answers, i.e. answers repeated or paraphrased, were coded as one. The investigator categorized the pupils’ answers. To determine reliability the same test was performed as described above. There was a 98 per cent agreement between the senior investigator’s categorizations and the raters.
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

Figure 2. Pupils’ answers: DI (directly from the text), OW (own words), I (inference), R (reflection), QW (Question about words)

Figure 2 shows that most of the pupils’ answers were taken directly from the text during the regular lessons. Very few of the pupils chose to express themselves in their own words. They made just one inference and two reflections. Furthermore, none of them either questioned the author or commented the text. During the QtA lessons the pupils’ answers had undergone a change. The pupils’ propensity to retrieve answers directly from the text had decreased. More than half of the answers were inferences and reflections. Regarding the control groups there were few pupils’ answers in one of the groups because the teacher mostly gave the answers himself. In the other control group the pupils made some inferences and reflections.

Teachers’ strategies and pupils’ interactions with texts

The teachers made, on the average, between six and nine segmentations in “In the classroom” and between six and eight in “Plenty of jobs in the industry and many new-born babies”. Every segment included about 37 words.

The teachers applied different strategies to make the pupils grapple with text ideas. At each segmentation, they most often started by asking a specific factual question and then a collaborative discussion took place where the author was apostrophized. To make them read between the lines, teacher Skog applied the following strategy:

Teacher Skog: […] Is there anything in the text that the author has omitted?
Alva: I think there should have been explained why there were such big windows in the newbuilt houses and why it was so important with big bathrooms…
Amanda: I think so too because now we just got an incomplete sentence, like “my name is” and nothing else.
The pupils actively contributed to their peers’ ideas during the QtA lessons. As can be seen from the excerpt below they succeeded in finding out the reasons why not every single class was allowed to have their own classroom. Fredrik and Per were good readers but Hugo was a poor reader with a low self-esteem who spoke very quietly. The teacher used the strategy of marking, i.e. she drew the attention to what Hugo had brought up in order to emphasize its importance. Bringing a pupil’s idea on to public arena is important because it represents a first step in using pupils’ ideas for developing discussion.

Teacher Skog: The text states that the classes consisted of pupils of different ages. What does that mean?
Per: That there were not very big schools and one single grade could not be alone in the classroom but had to be there together with other grades.

Teacher Skog: Alva!
Alva: I agree with Per but maybe there were so many pupils in one single classroom because they did not have enough teachers.

Teacher Skog: Fredrik!
Fredrik: They did not have enough classrooms.
Teacher Skog: Maybe.
Fredrik: And not enough pupils in each grade.
Hugo: Maybe there were just a few pupils in each grade.
Teacher Skog: Will you repeat ...
Hugo: Maybe there were not so many young pupils but many older ones so they had to share a classroom.

When all segments were read the teachers most often made a final summary. This was not done in the control groups. The time spoken about the text in the classroom also changed from on average 16.5 minutes during the regular lesson to on average 31 respectively 24 minutes during the QtA lessons. The figures indicate that segmenting a text and dealing with text ideas on-line is more time-consuming than just reading a whole text through silently in the classroom and then discuss it.

Discussion

In this study, structured talks (QtA) online affected the way that four teachers and their pupils talked about texts. The results demonstrated that the teachers not only asked more questions during the QtA lessons but also that the question types changed. The number of purely factual questions decreased. Instead there was an increase in the number of inferences, half-open questions and specific factual questions. The increase of teacher questions as well as the changing nature of the questions was probably a consequence of the teachers’ reflecting on their lessons by viewing the tapes, reading transcripts, discussing the effects of different question types and teacher strategies etc. In the control groups the number of teacher questions’ decreased during the second and the third regular lessons.

The changing nature of teacher questions produced a change in the pupils´ answers. During the QtA lessons all pupils, both good and poor readers, interacted more
actively with the text when reading and they inferred from and reflected on the content. The author was also questioned on several occasions. Consequently, the time spent on discussing the text increased during the QtA lessons. The pupils’ active involvement in the structured text talks was probably a consequence of the spread-out discussion which facilitated comprehension and interpretation of complex sections in the texts. Dealing with a complex expository text in the course of reading may be particularly effective for poor readers. It can scaffold their comprehension processes by providing opportunities for them to reflect upon events and ideas, to scrutinize connections as they are encountered in the expository text being read. The present results are in accordance with Beck et al. (1996). The pupils in the control groups seldom had the opportunity to wrestle with text ideas and they never questioned the author.

During the QtA lessons the teachers – in contrast to those in the control groups – were also more attentive to where the pupils were in their construction process, their prior knowledge, etc; and that affected the way they directed the talk about the text. The results are for the most part in line with Beck et al. (1996).

A limitation of the study is that there are just two control groups. Another limitation is that one of the teachers in the control groups had less experience from teaching than the other teachers. This fact may have affected the teacher’s way of questioning and use of strategies.

The pupils in the present study attended grade 4. The majority of them had inadequate reading strategies in the beginning of the study. However, the study indicated that they had the potential to develop into good, active readers. This underlines the importance of putting the teaching of reading comprehension on the agenda and start asking inference and half-open questions already in grade 3. Inference questions are necessary if the teacher wants the pupils to get a deeper understanding of the text. By asking such questions, the teacher is likely to become a model for the pupils when they have to question the author on their own.

References
Beck, Isabel, L; McKeown, Margaret, G; Sandora, Cheryl; Kucan, Linda. & Worthy, Jo. 1996. Questioning the Author: A yearlong implementation to engage students with text. The Elementary School Journal, 96(4): 385 – 414.


Workshop 3

Quality, Evaluation and Selection
Textbooks as Learning Resources

Anthony Haynes

During my time in publishing I have become interested in assessing textbooks from a structuralist point of view. Most publishers devote time and money to the assessment of the content of textbooks. They frequently employ subject experts for that purpose. However, they tend to devote less attention to the assessment of textbook structure. This chapter demonstrates one way of assessing structure by drawing on educational theory.

The focus will be on textbooks published for undergraduates in Literary Studies. I have chosen this area deliberately. I write at a time of considerable pessimism in the industry concerning the current state and future development of the textbook market and yet, behind the backs of the pessimists, some publishers have quietly been growing their programmes by colonising subjects not previously regarded as textbook markets at all. Literary Studies, in particular, has in recent years (at least in the UK) seen a burst of innovative textbook publishing.

I shall, in particular, focus on the second editions of Peter Barry’s Beginning Theory, Robert Eaglestone’s Doing English and Rob Pope’s The English Studies Book (all published in 2002). All of these books have been widely adopted.

A Question of Genre

Before these texts are assessed, however, it may well be asked whether they are in fact textbooks. Rob Pope’s book unquestionably is: the large format, the explicit address to undergraduates, and the inclusion of pedagogic activities all make that clear. The author must have known that this was a textbook when he wrote it (though he shows on the first page that he prefers the term “handbook”). But what of Doing English? This is a small book containing no exercises or activities. To judge from the text, it is quite possible that the author did not originally intend the book as a textbook. The subtitle (“A guide for literature students”) is equivocal on that score. The first paragraph of the introduction runs:

If you are studying English literature for AS/A2 level, for the International Baccalaureate or on an Access course [pre-degree courses offered in the UK], or are starting a degree in literature, this book is for you. In fact, whatever English literature course you are taking, no matter where you are, this book is not only an ideal stepping-stone to higher education but also an introduction to crucial new questions and ideas about English and literature (Eaglestone, 2002, 1).

The first sentence implies that the book is intended not as a textbook but rather as supplementary or introductory reading. The second sentence, however, blurs the issue and thus opens up the possibility that the book may be used as a course text by students already on a degree course.
Now, whatever the original authorial intention, the book has indeed been used as such (aided, no doubt, by such textbook features as the inclusion of summaries in the form of bullet points at the end of each chapter). The more it is used as a course text, the more its sales will be driven by lecturer recommendation and the more the pattern of sales will resemble those of textbooks: the book will sell off the backlist through multiple orders at certain times of year. Though this may not resolve the question of genre from some points of view (that, say, of a linguistian researching discourse analysis), from a publisher’s perspective it certainly does: the book is a textbook because it exhibits in the market the behaviour of a textbook.

On the scale of textbook-ness, Peter Barry’s book comes somewhere between Pope’s and Eaglestone’s. It has the same small format as Eaglestone, but is more substantial and provides “Stop and think” boxes that approximate to pedagogic exercises. It is addressed explicitly at undergraduates. Interestingly, in the introduction the author says that the book’s “emphasis on practice” means that it is “a ‘work-book’, not just a ‘text-book’.” The “just” is ambiguous: it could mean either (a) that the book offers all that a textbook ( or “text-book”) offers and more besides or (b) that it is better than a mere textbook. One should note in passing that authorial nervousness over the term “textbook” is typical of subject areas only recently (or still in the process of being) colonised by textbook publishing. From the point of view of the publisher, however, there is no doubt: this is a textbook because it will behave as such in the marketplace.

**Educational Theory**

There are various ways in which theories drawn from education may assist structuralist assessments of textbooks. For the purposes of this chapter I shall focus on learning theory – in particular, David Kolb’s theory of experiential learning.

In *Experiential Learning: Experience as the source of learning and development* Kolb argues (or asserts) that there are four “modes” of learning (Kolb 1984). These divide into two pairs, each defining a spectrum. The first pair comprises “concrete” learning (learning from particular examples of realia, the here-and-now, the nitty-gritty and so on) and “abstract” learning (learning from deductive theory, generalisation, abstract concepts and so on). The second pair comprises “reflective” learning (standing back, recapitulating, considering afresh) and “active” learning (learning from doing things, intervening, trying something new).

I should say straightaway that I am aware that Kolb’s theory is open to criticism. I acknowledge that the derivation of Kolb’s very neat, clean, models is worryingly remote from empirical research findings. I draw on Kolb for pragmatic reasons: in my work as a publisher I have found Kolb’s concepts easily memorable, communicable (to both editors and authors) and applicable. Moreover, whether or not one is convinced that there are learning modes of the type that Kolb claims, it is undeniable that in defining them he covers several different aspects of learning. As a
result, any publisher developing textbooks based on Kolb’s concepts is likely, willy-nilly, to broaden the kinds of learning experience that those books offer to readers.

Assessing Literary Studies textbooks

Now let us look at *Beginning Theory* through Kolbian lenses. How does it look? To answer this question I will focus on just one chapter, namely that entitled “Narratology” – though because most chapters in the book are constructed on a similar pattern I am confident that an analysis of other chapters would yield comparable results.

Peter Barry certainly caters for the concrete mode of learning. The final five pages of the chapter provide a case study, consisting of one narratological reading of one literary narrative – namely, Edgar Allan Poe’s story, “The Oval Portrait” (Barry, 2002, 242-46). Barry also facilitates the concrete mode of learning by providing, in an appendix, the actual text of that narrative (Barry, 2002, 272-75).

Barry provides plenty of opportunity for abstract learning too. For example, the main body of the chapter consists of an exposition of the theories of three narratologists (Aristotle, Propp and Genette), introducing such concepts as “mimesis” and “diegesis” (Barry, 2002, 224-39).

Thus we may say that the concrete-to-abstract spectrum of learning is well covered in *Beginning Theory*.

What does Barry offer the reflective learner? Perhaps his section entitled “Stop and think” is intended to encourage reflection (Barry, 2002, 240-41). In fact, though, its execution is rather curious. It invites reflection on just one aspect of Barry’s foregoing discussion, namely the use of technical language (Barry asks the reader to consider whether there is a good reason for using jargon in narratology). This reflection is thus rather partial – and he does little to encourage readers to relate the contents of the chapter to their own prior knowledge. Here he surely misses an opportunity. All of his readers will have had experience of hearing, reading, and telling narratives, yet at no point does he invite them to reflect on their own experience.

Barry also rather ignores the opportunities for active learning. The sentences in the section “What narratologists do”, for example, are all third-person descriptive sentences (Barry, 2002, 241). For instance, he says that narratologists “counteract the tendency of conventional criticism to foreground character and motive by foregrounding instead action and structure.” Actively-minded learners can of course convert that into an imperative directed at themselves (“Study a narrative from the point of view of action and structure rather than character and motive!”) – but the point is that they are left to make the grammatical conversion: Barry doesn’t provide it for them (and, in any case, the advice offered is pretty rudimentary). Nowhere does Barry suggest that readers explore narratology by constructing narratives of their own.
Thus we may say that *Beginning Theory* covers the concrete-to-abstract spectrum of learning much more fully than it does the reflective-to-active spectrum.

To what extent is this finding typical of Literary Studies textbooks? By way of testing this we may compare Barry’s chapter with that entitled “Narrative and Closure” in Eagleston’s *Doing English* (though we should be wary of treating Eaglestone’s chapter as typical of his book, since there is some variation in the pattern of chapters within the book). Like Barry, Eagleston provides plenty of opportunity for abstract learning. He too outlines the narratological theory of Vladimir Propp and introduces abstract concepts (notably that of “closure”). Eaglestone also caters for the concrete learner. Though in his much briefer chapter there is no room for an extended case study such as Barry’s analysis of Edgar Allan Poe, Eaglestone does provide frequent examples to particular narratives. He refers to texts by literary authors such as Jane Austen, James Joyce, Joseph Conrad, Henry James and Thomas Pynchon and to examples of fairy stories, television programmes and film. Thus Eaglestone, like Barry, covers both ends of the concrete-to-abstract spectrum of learning.

What of the reflective-to-active spectrum? Eaglestone provides opportunities for reflective learning more consistently than does Barry. He encourages readers to reflect on their experience of narrative in everyday life. In the discussion of the way that narratives construct the world, for example, Eaglestone’s grammar switches to the second person: “if you were asked to tell someone about yourself – at a job interview, say – you quickly outline the broad story of who you are, where you come from and so on” (Eaglestone, 2002, 98). Similarly in the discussion of narrative closure Eaglestone asks, “How irritated are you if you miss the end of TV drama or the last few minutes of a football game?” (Eaglestone, 2002, 101). In such ways Eaglestone consistently prompts readers to reflect on their experience of both producing and receiving narratives.

Latent in such prompts is an opportunity to provide exercises designed for active learners. When, for example, Eaglestone asks, “Would you read a book or see a film if you knew that the end was missing?”, this could lead on to a suggestion that readers either search for such narratives (Nikolai Gogol’s classic, *Dead Souls*, for example) or try to compose one (Eaglestone, 2002, 101). Eaglestone, however, never in fact follows through to provide invitations to active learning. Thus *Doing English*, though catering more frequently than *Beginning Theory* for reflective learners, tends to share that text’s lack of awareness of the active mode of learning.

Now let us consider briefly, by way of contrast, the provision for learning in the section entitled “Narrative in story and history” in *The English Studies Book* (Pope, 2002, 218-24). This section consists of discursive prose followed by some activities and, finally, some points for discussion. Here again there is plenty of opportunity for abstract learning: the text introduces concepts (“fabula” and “sjuzet”, for example) and theories (those of Propp and Labov). However, there is less provision, at least in the discursive passages, for the concrete learner: though some authors and narratives are mentioned, such mentions are very brief and extremely generalised. The
discursive part of Pope’s text makes no explicit invitation to reflective learning: readers’ prior experiences of narratives are ignored.

To some extent, however, the learning activities provided by Pope do compensate for the lack of opportunities for both concrete and reflective learning in the discursive text. For example, Pope invites readers to “Draw on one or more of the models/checklists supplied … to help analyse a narrative and a process of narration which interests you” (Pope, 2002, 223). Furthermore, these activities also provide (in a way that neither Beginning Theory nor Doing English do) for the active learner. This is most evident in the third activity provided by Pope:

Adapting beginnings and endings. Speculate how you would film and edit the opening and closing sequences of a novel with which you are familiar. Be sure at some point to consider all the main technical, formal and social dimensions referred to above (Pope, 2002, 223).

Such an activity does not provide for out-and-out active learning: readers are asked to “speculate” rather than to actually either produce or edit narratives for themselves. Nevertheless, the exercise is clearly a step towards the stimulation of active learning.

Conclusion

In summary, we may say that Beginning Theory, Doing English and The English Studies Book all provide frequent prompts to abstract learning. Two of them – Beginning Theory and Doing English – do this too for concrete learning. Doing English provides more fully than either of the other two texts for reflective learning, though through its learning activities The English Studies Book also does this to some extent. The section in The English Studies Book is the only one that explicitly provides for active learning. None of the books offers balanced provision for all four modes of learning.

These findings suggest that there is an opportunity for the authors each to learn from their counterparts when working on the next editions of their books. And (this, of course, interests me a good deal!) there is a wonderful opportunity for an enterprising publisher to score over the competition by producing a textbook that provides comprehensively for all four of the modes of learning described by Kolb.

References

Barry, Peter. 2002 (2nd ed.). Beginning Theory: An introduction to literary and cultural theory. Manchester: Manchester UP.


Visual texts in Finnish history textbooks

Jaakko Väisänen

This paper reports on visual texts in history textbooks used in Finnish upper secondary schools. The key concept of this paper is visual text and its content in history learning. In this paper visual texts are not perceived as pictures, maps and graphs but also “imagetexts”. Texts and visual texts are not separate phenomena in textbooks but only different means to represent historically and culturally constructed information. Studies on textbooks are usually based upon the assumption that the meanings lie in the text itself. Textbooks are as a store of meanings shared the community. On the other hand constructivist and cognitive learning studies claim that the comprehension of meaning lies in the complex interaction between the author's intent and his/her performative ability to encode that intent.

What is a visual text?

In language, text is a broad term for something that contains words to express something where as linguistics text is a communicative act. In literary theory a text is the object being studied, whether it is a novel, a film or a TV commercial. The broad use of the term derives from the rise of a philosophical theory of the functions of signs and symbols (Sonesson, 1998; Nöth, 1994).

There is a saying "a picture is worth a thousand words". We also know how difficult it is to transform a picture into words. One of the reasons for this difficulty is that images can have an infinite number of interpretations and inferences. No text description can possibly cover all these interpretations, and nobody knows exactly which inferences people will draw (Mikkonen, 2005, 17). However, in the era of knowledge-based economies and hybridized media to transform the earlier saying into the phrase “a word is worth a thousand pictures”. That means the flood of pictures or imagery (Kress, 2003). Some other researchers use in this case the concepts “imagetext” or “scriptovisual text” (Mikkonen, 2005, 47-48).

Nowadays when we use the concept of literacy we refer not only to the skill of reading but also to situations in which we have constructed meanings from various types of texts. Then we refer to the concept of multiple literacy (Knobel and Lankshear, 2004; Kress, 2003). In that case we consider the text as a space or a way of interacting or conveying our experience to them.

But as Nöth (1994) and Wenz (1997) argues the text as a space provides a semiotic paradox. Structurally, human interaction is an acoustic phenomenon without spatial extension: it is structured as a sequence in time. However, product of this process is the text, which is referred to very often in terms of spatial metaphors. Already Saussure, speaking of the phonetic chain only in terms of time, attributed a spatial dimension to the linearity of signs. First dimension is the literal meaning, the second dimension is called meta-textual topoi of space, levels, or surface structures and the
third dimension is intra-textual or inter-textual reference, or meta-textual organization of units such as chapters. The findings of Nöth (1994) may confirm the hypothesis on the cognitive origin of these linguistic expressions. Cognitive semantics has attempted to explain space metaphors in everyday language by referring to the biological relevance of how humans perceiving space and orienting themselves within it in phases of pre-linguistic language acquisition (Lakoff, 1987, 269-292).

**The pedagogical uses of pictures**

I analyzed in my thesis different functions that pictures may have in three history textbooks (closer Väisänen, 2005, 76-79). One analyzed textbook was published in 1965 and the others in 1995. In my analysis I apply categorization created by Levin, Anglin and Carney (1987, 35-37 and 45-48). The comparison reveals firstly that most pictures in Finnish history textbooks are either decorative or presentative. More surprisingly is to find that there are few images that can be classified as being transforming or interpreting images. Third finding was that the functions of images in Finnish history textbook have not changed during the decades. In a pointed way it could be argued that the dominance of decorative and presentative images suggests that the choice of images has been steered by the paradigm of behaviorist learning. The paradigm of behaviorism argues that all meanings in the text have cultural meanings common to everybody; in other words pictures only extend or interpret some mentioned in the text.

The comparison also manifests that the amount of images has not increased considerably in time. In this sense, firstly, Finnish history textbook seems to be not highly illustrated. The second conclusion is that the linear texts predominate in textbooks regardless of the time of publishing. The functional classification does not describe the whole truth. In her study Tang (1994) uses the concept “graphic percentage” to explain how many pages in a textbook have illustrations. In my opinion graphic percentage may reveal some indications of the usage of a dual-coding system in planning a history textbook. Compared with the results by Tang (1994) Finnish history textbooks are not so visualized as Canadian, Mexican or Japanese textbooks of social science. In this respect there is no flow of visual texts in Finnish textbooks. On the other hand comparison indicated that the designers of history textbooks for on thing or another do not use the advantages of Paivio’s dual-coding system.

**Other kinds of visualizations**

On the other hand, all visualizations concerning historical processes in these particularly textbooks are not pictures. There are different types of visualization to help the learner to understand phenomena of history or historical concept of transition. When we speak about visualized or hybridized culture we usually mean the amount of pictures. The notion of flood can also mean other kinds of visualizations as Nikula (2004) pointed out in her article. I would like link this to
transition more deeply but it was not possible because the textbook published in 1965 contains neither maps nor other kinds of visualization. The only visualizations in this textbook were only one graph and eight tables. In the textbooks of 1990’s situation is different. There are lots of maps, graphs, tables and presentations which have some features of multimedia (closer Väisänen, 2005, 83-86). In this respect clear transition has taken place.

The transition could be explained from two points of view. The first transition concerns the paradigm of history teaching. In the 1960’s the emphasis was on political history, but in the 1990’s on social and economic history. It seems to be characteristic to social and economic history to present information in the shape of tables and graphs. The second explanation is the choice of text-ideology. Maps, graphs or tables provide an opportunity to present information that is even tighter form than text.

Also in this direction there are in textbooks many pictures, figures, or diagrams that are appended to very little or no explanatory information at all. The following conclusion may be drawn: tables and graphs usually make meanings mentioned in text more confuse. The students then have to explain concealed or confused meanings of graphs or maps by making them imagetexts or semiotic Gestals. Students could say for example:

- "this graph of population reveals the growth of the cities"
- "this map shows the enlargement of the Finnish territory".

These non-linear texts change into images. We do not only describe or repeat the information of graph or map but also read the data between the lines by making enlightened guesses. In this respect there is no difference between visually impaired and non-impaired readers. In cognitive psychology (Billig, 1999) text is defined as that which is the subject of commenting, that which is quotation discussed. That is which is a quote or is considered worth quoting. In other words, a text is something that gives rise to a meta-text.

Actually it seems that we don’t read the data contained in a graph or a map, but we relate the impressed data with our prior knowledge, beliefs or even bodily movements. Therefore the concept of literary involves something more than how to operate in a language system. We end up with the concept of discourse, by which we normally mean “ways of being in the world”. In this respect language is part of discourses, but discourses are more than the language because they relate identities to the usage of language [Knobel and Lankshear (2004); content analysis applies a set of techniques to a given text to determine (Fairclough, 2004, 236-246; Potter and Wetherell, 1995, 6-10)].

These findings lead to a broader analysis of interaction between written text and visual text or non-linear elements. Firstly, unless visualizations interact with the meanings of the text these visualizations can only confuse reader. Pekkala (1999, 137-138) has drawn the following conclusion:
In general, the older books’ text does not always refer to the pictures presented on the same page. Correspondingly, the captions do not always refer to the text in the chapter. This could be a common feature in textbooks. The same pictures can be used in different captions, though the context is usually the same.

My analysis confirms the conclusion drawn by Pekkala. In my analysis images and different types of graphs can usually be considered only as extensions of the text and seldom deepen student’s skills to analyze information more deeply. In these books decorative or presentative pictures have become “worth a thousand words” or “imagetexts”.

Linguistic visualizations

In Paivio’s (1971) dual-coding theory non-verbal imagery and verbal processes are distinguished primarily in terms of their functions as symbolic systems, although an assumed relationship between the two processes and visual and auditory sensory modalities has functional implications. In the classical approach the concept “image” was used to refer to consciously-experienced mental processes rather generally and distinctions were drawn in terms of the sensory modality of the image as revealed by introspection.

Metaphors and figurative devices in according to Cameron (2002, 6-9 and 37-40) cannot be analyzed with statistical methods because metaphorical meanings are conveyed through an interaction between readers and receivers. Critical discourse analysis (CDA) uses the concept of artifact when describing those linguistic features influence on social processes. These artifacts are always culturally defined tools by which people try changing their reality or “lived world”⁴. In most interactions, users of language bring with them different dispositions towards language, and these are closely related to their social positions. By using CDA it is conceivable to analyze this kind of problems and reveal “descriptions of the materiality of language”. In according to Fairclough (2000, 241-244 or 2004) each text had to be analyzed from four points of views ⁵.

We think that by using this linguistic device we can convey more information or some attitude towards the phenomenon. I will illustrate this with two examples:

“Man has been a modest outsider in the great play of mankind.”

“Industrialization created a brave new world of big cities. These cities seem to live a life independent of the surrounding countryside and nature.”

Firstly, the expressions “a modest outsider” or “brave new world of big cities” contain the idea that the text-writer uses these expressions not only as figurative

---

⁴ Originally concept is in German Lebens Welt. It was first introduced by Husserl. Later Habermas gave this concept a three-dimensional definition. It follows that these social and cultural processes are never arbitrary although Burkitt (1999, 6-10) emphasized that our bodies are the source of our collective experiences and a site for opposition to established power relations.

⁵ These points of views are: 1. Representing, 2. Relating, 3. Identifying and 4. Valuing.
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

301
devices, but also to show his attitude to nature itself. These sentences, the relation
between man and nature, reveal features of ideological discourse. In this discourse
wild nature is valued as the only real nature. In the course of time urban nature has
separated from real nature. Secondly, these sentences reveal features of another
discourse. According to this discourse man is in a continuous fight against nature.
Nature has put man in irons but he will free himself from these irons. These two
eamples lead us to interpreted knowledge. Such knowledge poses always dilemmas
and not free from ideological or cultural practices as Fairclough (2004, 20-24) has
pointed.

Metaphors when used as an educational tool tends to suggest references to the text-
writer’s own attitudes towards the pieces of knowledge conveyed. Although in
Finnish history textbooks text-writers want keep the role of external observer, they
actually reveal their own epistemological and ontological premises (Väisänen, 2005,
95-97). In my opinion, critical discourse analysis offer adequate linguistic tools for
analyzing metaphors not only as linguistic phenomena but also as devices used for
expressing attitudinal knowledge. Metaphoric expressions never contain extensive
description about an historical event, but only a certain facet of this event.

This can be demonstrated by looking at the way reality and fiction is linked by
imagination in literary space. Here modern aesthetics of space is opposed to the
traditional separation between space and time and its adequate media, say, painting
and fiction. This is the line of argument. But if we understand the linearity of texts
as a projection of semiotic principles structured on the basis of the linguistic
principles, we may logically also argue for a cultural convention or social order of
space designed through texts: it is a matter of categorizing perception through shared
knowledge, or, as Lakoff (1987, 126) puts it, seeing always means “seeing as”. The
natural embodiment of the perceived spatial relations is culturally encoded and
thereby leads to a kind of iconic link between perception, language, and the world
perceived. However, the codes representing space are not merely images of the
surrounding world but instructions to its individual and social construction

- After the wedding the Greek woman devoted herself completely to taking
care of “oikos” (i.e., the Greek household).
- When the earnings of breadwinners were insufficient to maintain his family,
  women and children had to go work in manufactures. The conditions of the
  workers in manufactures were not any better than those of a convict in prison.

If we understand culture as a form of memory, and if we avoid separating cultural memory
from the historical processes or other human communication, we may well combine the two
sources referred to earlier - the cognitive and the rhetorical - and link them to the cultural
process of semiosis which finds its Gestalt in texts. Focusing on the problem of how to
represent the complexity of three-dimensional space in the linearity of one-dimensional sign
sequences. Wenz (1997) suggests that texts may develop their own notion of space within
which the reader will find his orientation during the process of reading. In other words, it is
the reader who constructs "text spaces" based on the interpretation of semiotic Gestalt.
We can draw two conclusions from these example sentences. Firstly, by using metaphors (i.e., *devoted herself completely to taking care of “oikos”* in stead of **for example running a household and breadwinner** in stead of **for example husband**) in these sentences text-writer suggests that running the household is more valuable for women than working outside the home. Secondly, metaphoric expressions tell something about practices guiding the text-writer’s thinking. In this case the metanarrative in the background stresses the role of man as the main actor in historical events. These questions determine our cognitive perspectives from which we look at historical events or phenomena. In this case text-writer uses gender as an imaginary community. For example Bauman (1990) names concepts of this kind something to identify with. If the reader does not have prior knowledge about gender issues to estimate intertextual features he/she consider above presented dilemmatic information as a only and common truth.

**Discussion**

Despite the concept of historical transition has been the major theme in Finnish curricula, one of the main results of my analysis is that these three textbooks seldom use visual text as a pedagogical tool to represent historical information. It seems that no drastic change has taken place from the 1960’s to the 1990’s.

Secondly, my study reveals that visual texts in Finnish history textbooks are not primarily used as a mean to increase understanding of the situation mentioned in the text. The genuine meaning of Latin word “*illustration*” was to make textual meanings clearer or more understandable. This is not the way to use images in Finnish history textbooks. My categorizations show that most images have a nature of decorative or presentative and so have few interactions with the text. Conclusion can be drawn despite of the time of publishing. The only visible minor change is that the captions related to the pictures are nowadays shorter than 1960’s. It is obvious that the possibilities of pictures are not very well thought out. As Selander (1991, 68) puts it: “*nice pictures which may have very little to do with what is mentioned in the text.*”

In fact, history is a school subject where we learn by reading text not by analyzing visualizations. This is a prevailing educational practice. Lankshear and Knobel has argued in their book (2004, 100-110; or Kress, 2003) that schools have shown little understanding of changes in literacies. A few changes have been taken place in textbook layouts, learning paradigms or means of textual representations. In this respect my study buttresses Knobel’s and Lankshears’s argumentation. Is has been taken long time for granted that linear texts are something to learn and other elements something to watch. From the semiotic point of view every text or visualization has on the inside a text-world life that is ordered and meaningful. On the other hand outside of text is chaotic, disorderly and impossible to understand (Sonesson, 1998).
In the context of school textbook might be the best tool for safety and order because teachers can study the text before the lesson and most of the meanings in the text are familiar to teacher. There is only a light enhance that something unpredictable will happen in the classroom. If the teacher uses more visual texts or imagetexts as a pedagogical material, students have lots of opportunities to ask unpredictable questions or express their astonishment for example. Pupils might ask something that the teacher is not prepared or does not know.

By saying this one forgets the third side of that phenomenon. In the same time, as analysis based upon CDA points out, Finnish textbooks have also many hidden socio-cultural practices constructed by “socially situated speakers and writers” at the schools (Fairclough, 2004, 20-25). Although we see the world of visualization as chaotic in general, we can also see that images often lead to immediate comprehension in the classroom. This is something that is much more difficult to gain from reading a text. Images, metaphors or pictures have cultural properties that reveal certain relations or narratives automatically. This is why charts are often used instead of tables, or maps instead of long text-based route descriptions. Paivio (1971) argues that visual information helps to process and remember verbal information and vice versa. Critics of multiple-channel communication have contested that overloading the senses through multiple channels could result in less efficient learning, and that the addition of cues in a second channel or even excessive cues within the same channel can be distracting and detrimental to learning.

Textbooks analyzed


References


“When anyone can publish anything”
How to evaluate sources according to textbooks
for different educational choices
Anita Norlund

Evaluation of sources is a proficiency with a long tradition in academic contexts. It is today, due to the fact that the Internet has become a contributor with sources, met with a discussion on young people’s desirable skills in evaluating sources, text based or others. Such an encounter between the old and the new creates a possible field of tension, worth examining. Still, it should be remembered that a more gradual development occurred during the greater part of the 20th century, while the educational ideal changed, “moving away from a formative, structuralistic, hierarchical and firm view of knowledge towards a function-oriented, tentative, questioning and relative one” (Selander, 2001, 41).1 This more modern view of knowledge includes that the student “learns to evaluate information from various sources” (p 20) and that electronic texts are paid attention to. The transfer from page to screen will have political importance on literacy situations and may involve a shift of power (Kress, 2003). Fairclough points out that literacy has a remarkable value in our society but is today not distributed in a fair way. However, there are reasons to be optimistic; power inequities may be changed when the Internet is now available to many people (Fairclough, 2001).

The theoretical framework

Being a good evaluator of sources, I argue, partly means being good at judging risks. The evaluator needs to weigh the credibility in sources, and possibly reject sources that are less trusty, or even false. Risk thinking may be considered a characteristic of late modernity (Giddens, 1991). This is contradictory; Giddens points out how security nowadays has rather grown and actually dominates the risks.2 In spite of this fact, we are perpetually occupied with risks. Every single modern individual is expected to become an expert, to make strategic plans and reflexive decisions in a multiple choice society. Expert-related issues to stay critical towards, or to place trust in, are interwoven into our daily life. A complicated relationship between risk and trust arises. Moreover, risks may be numerous and global and cause a feeling of powerlessness among people (Beck, 1986/1998)3 This looks different today than in the past when risks were visible and consequently they need to be approached in a scientific way. Although risks may strike everybody and although they are not distributed parallel to wealth, it does not hinder that the distribution of risks are

---

1 The report mainly deals with the subject of Physics.
2 For instance concerning health care and hygiene.
3 Beck mainly illustrates this by reasoning on ecological risks.
linked to social class and that the skills needed when facing risks, are related to education and income (Beck, 49). In a safe financial position it is possible to choose where to live and where to be educated. Through education people are taught how to handle risks or to refrain from them. Beck maintains that class society is made even more accentuated, not the opposite. Due to this fact, it is important that education runs counter to such a tendency. Gramsci, who took a particular interest in schools and educational power relationships, described the Italian school as withheld through hegemony; “a system of values, attitudes, beliefs and morality that has the effect of supporting the status quo in power relations” (Burke, 1999, 2). Gramsci criticized the Italian school system for calling the vocational school democratic, when it in fact emphasized differences and where “the mass of the population was kept in its place” (6). Education made sure that no counter hegemony was produced and that nothing threatened a societal consensus.

Evaluation of sources could be looked upon as an old middle class skill with its roots in archaic literature studies and likewise a skill that in Gramsci’s words is associated with bourgeois values. In contrast to this it can, according to me, also be considered to be a skill useful when opposing to the traditional. A further angle on the political element is that critical proficiencies, i.e. being self-regulating, taking risks but also acting in a well-considered way, are proficiencies that are important for employability according to New Labour policy documents (Mulderrig, 2003). This is being criticized by Mulderrig who points out that an earlier intrinsic value for education, now has taken the form of an extrinsic value for economy.

The study

Educational media have often been discussed in the light of its, not seldom negative, capacity as a value carrier. Textbook research has focused a myriad of such matters; social, religious as well as cultural ones (LaSpina, 2003; Montgomery, 2005; Härenstam, 1993; Ajagán-Lester, 2000). However, it is more difficult to find textbook studies concerning skills, which will be the focus in the study presented below. Phenomena where individuals meet institutions are interesting to study (Berglez, 2000). In the case of this study, students meet with school as an educational institution via textbooks. The tone and the intention of textbook writers are frequently neglected matters in textbook research (Selander, 2001). To meet this, I have partly chosen to examine the interpersonal structure (Hellspong, 2001) where the social interplay offered by the books, can be focused. Useful terminology for such an analysis includes “participant”, “sender”, “receiver”, “social roles” and the way the receiver is “addressed”.

What used to be an academic expert skill is now related to the vast Swedish majority, since evaluation of sources is a syllabus goal for the subject of Swedish, for the lower as well as for the upper secondary school. This fact requires that the

---

4 The term is used in Burke’s presentation on Gramsci (1999).
5 By referring to Långström.
skill is materialised in educational media. The material chosen for my comparative analysis consists of twelve textbooks, one of them combined with a web-based part. They are all meant to be used by students who take the same compulsory course (qualifying everyone for higher education) irrespective of what kind of programme they attend. However, the textbooks are aimed at different target groups; students at upper secondary programmes preparing for further studies or at programmes preparing for vocations. These two types of programmes recruit students with two types of social backgrounds.6

Studying textbooks has its natural restrictions, which I do not intend to go deeper into. However, I like to highlight the fact that texts demand the reader himself or herself to add something to the understanding or for conclusions (cf Selander, 2001). It should be observed that pupils are actually able to do cynical readings as well as resistant ones (Kalmus, 2004). Still, it is not possible to interpret texts in any possible way (Gjerstad, 2004). By studying the meaning the media intend to create, knowledge may be added. Educational media should, consequently, not be looked upon as arbitrary materializations of representations (Selander, 2001; Fairclough, 2001; Jaworski & Coupland, 1999).

My text selection includes all twelve textbooks available during the spring term of 2005. The part that most clearly treats the phenomenon in focus, i.e., evaluation of sources, has been chosen respectively. Before giving a closer description of four selected textbooks, I would like to pinpoint that when looking at the desired student behaviour in all the books, one is struck by the similarity in the books, most of them using words as “anything may be published”, “published by anyone”, focusing primarily on the Internet. In modernity the local and the global meet and time and space cannot be clearly protected (Giddens, 1991). In my opinion, sources in general and the Internet in particular seem to be an illustration of this modernity; information is taken for granted and available 24 hours a day.

Two emerging patterns

I now intend to go on to the main part of this article, drawing on the survey of the twelve textbooks. There are textbooks that differ from a stereotype and there are contradictory features.7 Even so there are major traces that need being shed light on. By letting four books illustrate two contrasting ways of approaching students in an educational programme diversity, I argue that two different kinds of identities are encouraged. One pattern encourages a leisure oriented student identity and the other encourages a more academically oriented identity. The patterns seem to be related to the kind of programme the books themselves define as their target audience.

---

7 In addition, I would like to emphasize that textbooks are produced under diverse conditions, where the layout and illustration choice may be restricted by the publishers’ aesthetic policy or design decisions.
So is the first pattern, the leisure discourse, linked to students attending vocational programmes? The two books representing the vocational programmes address their receivers as leisure text consumers. The topics and tasks included in one of the books are generally motivated by the fact that they “take off from the students’ everyday life”. The skills are placed in a mass media context, which could in fact tell us that the students are expected to be interested in societal issues. This does not seem to be the fact, though, since the first news that is dealt with is about a flying saucer. And when another piece of news is presented, mentioned as difficult to evaluate, it tells the students that if they hear about a company in China using child labour it might be a misunderstanding or a rival’s rumour. Solidarity is not the main issue when political questions are brought up. Instead the students are to evaluate their leisure media habits or make personal reflections such as: “What is a fun piece of news, do you think?”

The leisure features are found in the cases even when students actually are expected to be text producers. Internet is here mentioned as a possible information source when the students are asked to prepare a presentation about how to make or produce something, about a hobby, a sport “that you practice”, a journey etc. In the other book the students practice by putting together facts about his or her idol. The pictures that appear show recreational situations; a coloured photo shows a sunbathing, sleeping boy with a newspaper covering his face and a transistor radio close to him. Colour means fictionality (Tønnessen, 2004). The message with the flying saucer is emphasized by coloured photos, representing a dead alien and a non-realistic spacecraft, possibly influenced by film aesthetics. It fulfils some of the criteria that present as giving low credibility to pictures (Pettersson, 2001).

The interplay with the reader can be characterized as close and private. The chapters in one of the vocational books are thematized in close titles like Here and now and the text choice includes articles dealing with “topics that move students at this age, i.e. bullying, isolation and influence from commercials, but also topics like fear, betrayal and love”. The tasks connect to personal feelings, personal opinions and private habits. Consequently, the authors approach their readers in a close, personal way, using tag questions like “do you think?”, the personal singular pronoun “you” and colloquial words such as “pal”. A closer look at the article, the one about the flying saucer and the factory in China, reveals that the reader repeatedly is addressed in the non-typical pronoun “you”, something that is explained by the fact that the article is a fictive one, written by the textbook authors. What looks like an authentic article with a three columned layout, a preamble and a background in a greyish/beige nuance, has been given a personal ingredient that does not correspond to what is expected from real articles.

---

8 One of the books is mainly aimed for students at The Individual Programme, a grade detention programme, and for vocational programmes, still for the actual course.

9 In the leaflet from the publishing company it is confirmed that the articles are written by the textbook writers themselves.
In addition to this, the books in question show a relation with its reader that is built on insecurity, giving the Internet great attention. The fictive article *Do not get fooled!* states that “anyone in the whole world may write anything, without you being able to check where the information comes from or whether it is true or false”. The other book says that “[o]n the Internet anything can be published and hardly anything controlled. Loads of information which are not checked by anyone reach millions of people!.../There are lots of people trying to influence you with their opinions, even if they want to hide it behind facts. Only you can unmask them!”. The quotations illustrate an authoritarian and dramatic tone, as does imperative chapter headings like *Take control!*. The sender uses imperatives, exclamation marks, modal verbs\(^{10}\) and a warning voice. When using the Internet the student’s responsibility is “particularly important” or “extra important”, i.e. reinforced in adverbs. The insecurity of the Internet is noticed in a phrase like “[t]ruths as well as rumours and evident lies”. Parallel to this the student is left alone to ‘unmask’ the villains. It is emphasized that the student is himself/herself responsible for judging.

It is dubious whether the students understand that help is embedded in an imaginary article. Besides, the questions that are placed after the article do not clearly inform whether the answers are to be found in the preceding article or in the student’s mind. The other book places its guiding questions in resource pages. There is no manifest intertextuality (Fairclough, 1992) to these pages, though. The linearity between the expository texts and the tasks in these books is broken.

Moving on to the other pattern, the two chosen textbooks address the academically oriented students actually as students. The proficiency is placed in an educational context, used when writing assignment papers, and students are text producers using factual literature. We find that one of the books express that it will make students familiar with the way the academy presents matters. The books show fewer combinations of modalities and have a higher degree of scientific character. The text impression is dense and sometimes there is an absence of pictures. Young people appear in pictures as students although one of the books use coloured drawings of students in a so called docussoap. The other book uses black-and-white photos showing students studying at a desk or in front of a computer having some of the criteria that give credibility (Pettersson, 2001). The tasks are higher order ones where students are expected to know what it means to ‘make parallels’, ‘draw well thought out conclusions’, ‘analyse’, ‘compare’ and ‘discuss’. These books have chapters with more distanced titles, just stating various, communicative, skills.

The text writers use the pronoun ‘we’ but then turn to addressing the readers as “you”, in the plural, not in the singular. Consequently, this way of being personal has a different character. On the whole the language is more formal, for example in using the word ‘classmates’ (instead of “pal” that was used in the other type of book), nominalizations and verbs in the passive, a ‘man’-address as well as the generic pronoun ‘one’. Moreover, the language is somewhat archaic, for example in

\(^{10}\) Four times in ‘ought to/should’ and once in ‘must’.
words such as ‘outermost’. Both books use the word ‘skribent’, a Swedish word with a Latin origin that shows its formal professional meaning, signalling an academic approach. The initial, reiterating sentence of a quotation is of a classical origin in its rhetoric:

How shall we handle all the knowledge that we get, how shall we know what our sources are worth, how shall we be able to separate the bad sources from the good ones?

In addition to this, students move in a public sphere for instance when they are asked to practise critical skills by scrutinizing a political party programme.

One of the books presents its reference to the resource page in a manifest reference. Both books place the task directly after the expository text and students are guided how to value sources; “Compare your Internet sources with encyclopaedias and factual literature. Rather inform about the printed sources if you find the same information in these.” To sum up, the instructions are both more detailed and give more elaborated guidance in weighing and evaluating.

The books express trust in the students’ ability and independence. One book suggests: “Sometimes you will certainly not agree with us – then, look at our text just as some compasses and not as a map!”. There are also verbs in the present tense which may signal that the student moves forward like in a reported style. It is argued for what sources generally are considered most trustworthy. “Avoid what is too private”, the student is requested when it comes to homepages. These books are not as imperative; the phrase “you get the opportunity” gives a less demanding impression and the language is devoid of superlatives.

Critical reading is defined:

Critical reading, does that mean to sit with one’s arms folded, the corners of one’s mouth down? No. That would rather be having a negative attitude to reading. To read critically means having a questioning attitude towards what one reads.

The Internet does not get a prominent position in the quotation. There are two possible reasons; either the Internet is neglected or it is considered to be a natural source. Nevertheless, the Internet is not dramatized to the same extent as in the other pattern.

Possible social consequences

Two discourse patterns have been presented, different in the way of addressing their receivers. One of them is more informal. On the one hand, taking everyday experience (and everyday language) as a starting point, can be a way of reducing hierarchies (Fairclough, 2003). On the other hand, the discourse of counselling that is apparent in for example schools, “seems in some cases at least to have been turned into a means to greater institutional control of people through exposing aspects of their ‘private’ lives to unprecedented institutional probing” (Fairclough, 2003, 60).
The vocational books include personalising features in their attempt to show confidentiality, a plausible example of synthetic personalization, “the simulation of private face-to-face, discourse in public mass-audience discourse” (Fairclough, 1992, 98). It is worth noting that the Internet is not treated as useful in a vocational context. The receivers are not addressed by the senders as future professionals, something which could have been expected. The social frame of a text and the real situation do not always agree (Hellspong, 2001). Here an example of such a disagreement emerges; the institutional real, expectedly formal, situation does not agree with the more informal, personally constructed social frame. The participants are given confusing social roles. On the whole, the interpersonal analysis shows asymmetric relationships.

In the other more formal pattern the social roles may be considered more consistent with what are expected in a school context. It expects students to be eager to learn and encourages educational ambitions. However, the middle class approach, for example in the generic pronoun ‘one’, which is a middle-class pronoun, might give reduced access for students from lower classes (Fairclough, 2003). Some participants are not included in the formality that is common in prestigious practices (Fairclough, 2001). An aspect of possible social consequences of this is the fact that the National Test of the Swedish B-course has particular requirements. According to the nationwide grading instructions students in their essays should “go beyond the purely private” to reach the higher grades, something that would speak for every student’s right to get acquainted with more formal topics. Most often at the National Test one more personal topic is given, which, however, does not give the opportunity to get the highest grade. A recent topic was what in Swedish metaphorically means My favourite place. It turned out to be a problematic one, requiring a lot of originality to make such a well-known topic interesting. The speech part of the test, which among other things intends to test the student’s ability to use sources, propose topics that may seem complicated in the light of what some of the textbooks offer familiarity with, for example What has discovery expeditions meant?. Further support for the fact that informality and formality, the private and the personal, have not been made equally evident to students is found in a study where Swedish teacher students found it difficult to select and evaluate (Ask & Sandblad, 2003). The results differed depending on what programme students had attended; those from the vocational programmes showed greater difficulties when asked to write factual essays about sustainability, far from a recreational context. Two types of texts were found among those who were not as successful as the others; one that was not formal and distant enough, but aggressive and arguing in an unscientific way, and one that was informal and private, resembling a life story.

---

11 It is worth noting that phrases like “make parallels”, that frequently are to be found in the instructions of the national tests and often is a worry to the students, was found in books for academic programmes.
Discussion

The Internet seems according to textbooks to be a source to warn of mainly pictured with an emphasis on insecurity. The survey confirms the assumption earlier made, that the school environment is possibly included in “institutionally structured risk environments” (Giddens, 1991, 117). Foremost, the textbooks for the vocational programmes, exemplify a contemporary “dramatising of the risks” (Giddens, 1991, 173). The growth of a certain late modern phenomena colonizes space as well as time by letting people having constant access to them (cf. Giddens, 1991). The fact that all textbooks, with one exception, include Internet issues confirms that the Internet is considered to be what students have common access to. From this, follows that they also have difficulties in avoiding it. Students have the chance to use it, but also need to know when not to. This demands complex work from the students; work that includes acting rationally as well as to let feelings aside (cf. Giddens, 1991, 171). Everyone has to become his own expert but in different ways (cf Beck, 1986/1998, Giddens, 1991). My textbook study shows that the vocational students are those who, at least by textbooks, are particularly left to their own responsibility. School books do not equally distribute ways of handling knowledge or sources. Those who are socialised into evaluation of sources end up in a world of constant weighing and judging, but are also instructed by textbooks how to do this, and may meet the need for the scientific approach (cf. Beck, 1986/1998).

Success is made into the responsibility of each individual. This self-regulation in the form of lifelong learning is motivated by the unstable situation on the labour market (Mulderrig, 2003, 5). Literacy, where I regard evaluation of sources to be an advanced form, is highly valued in our society but unequally distributed (cf Fairclough, 2001). Fairclough hoped for a change but when diverse groups of students are called upon diverse ways of handling the Internet, I mean that the optimism of its democratizing potential risks being futile. In this sense, textbooks as an institutional materialization actually run counter to its democratizing potential. In Gramsci’s words my study could be looked upon as revealing a hegemonic phenomenon, where school, in a less perceivable way, contributes to maintain a polarised situation.

References


12 For example, having access to fresh vegetables the year around.


**The textbooks**


Evaluation of history textbooks by students of primary schools and high-schools in Serbia

Arsen Djurovic

Introduction

In year 2000 when we had celebrated one of the most important dates in the history of Serbian culture, the 100th Anniversary of the Archives of Serbia foundation, one of the most popular themes in the scientific and cultural circles was a forthcoming educational reform that raised and stressed the question ‘How can our educational system be modernized?’ There is no accident that this issue was raised at the same time as the celebration of the significant anniversary in Serbia at the beginning of the 21st century, because The Archives, the institution that along with libraries and museums plays a very important social role within every nation in the process of orientation towards a national and cultural identity, as well as within the educational process. Three segments of the teaching process are set aside in the question referred to above: transformation of schools as institutions of great social importance and transformation of the school syllabus and curriculum at all levels of education (encompassing primary, secondary and higher education) and creating modern textbooks. We underline this, first of all, considering previous attempted reforms of education that completely failed, and in spite of expected positive effects (on modern schools, syllabus and curriculum) they resulted in an even worse situation, which is hard to find the way out of. ‘Victims’ of that failure were actual participants in the teaching process: teachers and students, often completely disoriented and helpless in trying to find a solution to make history teaching more interesting and intellectually ‘more provocative’ not only to many generations of students (in primary and secondary schools), but also to Belgrade University students and students of other universities in Serbia towards the end of the second millennium. In searching for the answer to the basic research issue we set ourselves this goal: What should be done to make the teaching more informative and consequently, more inspiring in order to stimulate the students’ thinking processes? How can the students become more interested in understanding the teaching of

---

1 Among the first users of the archive materials in the Archives of Serbia, as soon as it was established, were professors and students from the High School, and later, from the University, as well as professors from the Belgrade Gymnasia Schools (Milenko Vukićević). So as per the records of Dr Mihailo Gavrilović, the first Chief of the Archives, during 1904 there were 20 individuals using the archive materials (seven professors from the High School, two students from the High School, one professor from the gymnasia school etc.). Education Gazette, 1905, 612-613.

2 It is about-called Šuvar’s reform of schools since 1980.
history as a possibility to have 'divergent and ample ideas about the past', and how can we ensure an awakening conscience about an integrated history chain and inspire the students to reflect upon their own role in the history seen as the process of continuity (past, present and future)? To this body of questions also belongs one which refers to creating good, paper based history textbooks.

The results of a three-year survey conducted with the participation of the 4th year students of The Faculty of Philosophy, History Department, at Belgrade University, carried out within the project “Methodology Problems of Teaching History in Primary and Secondary Schools in Serbia” are exposed in this essay. The purpose of this survey is establishing the popularity of History as a school subject as well as the didactic characteristics of History Textbooks within Primary and Secondary education from the students’ point of view.

Methodological approach

The purpose of this survey is to establish the popularity of History as a school subject as well as some didactic characteristics of History textbooks within Primary and Secondary education from the students’ point of view. In order to respond fully to this task in a methodological sense, we used the method of an anonymous survey which, having in mind the age and intellectual potential of Primary and Secondary school students, enabled exact scientific findings.

The survey comprised 40 primary schools with 950 students (age 14), as well as 45 secondary and vocational schools with 1020 students in Serbia (age 18). Our attention was directed towards Primary, Secondary and Vocational schools due to our former research which has shown that in the process of deciding on necessary reforms of the educational system, particularly when dealing with the preparation of and the publishing of new textbooks, students’ opinions and suggestions were not taken into account to a proper extent. Therefore, we focused on senior primary school students (7th and 8th grades) and secondary and vocational schools (3rd and 4th grades) who have had a certain experience in using textbooks and other handbooks (3 years in primary, and 3 and 4 years in secondary schools) in order to get exact responses to the questions asked in this survey. Precise and brief responses given by students to the questions posed (on the popularity of History as a school subject, structure of the syllabus and characteristics of history textbooks) have been subjected to critical analysis and statistical processing.


4 Bibliographic data about papers which we have published about these issues are shown in references.
The Educational System in Serbia

Doctorate/Doctoral Thesis

Specialisation

Universities and Art Academies

Non-university High Schools

Higher Education

General Schools

Expert Schools

Vacational Schools

Secondary Education

Senior Grades (from 5" to 8")

Senior Grades (from 1" to 4")

Preparation for classes

Preschool Education

Entrance Examination

School-leaving Examination (BrE)

G.C.E. (A level) Examination (Am.E)

Qualifying Examination

Source: Ministry of Education
The Educational system in Serbia

The last reform of the educational system in Serbia took place in the beginning of autumn in year 2000, at the same time as major political changes occurred. Two changes were stressed in the attempt to modernize the educational system:

Primary school education was planned to be extended to 9 years instead of 8, and to be divided into 3 three-year cycles, together with a curriculum reform for primary and secondary schools. Special attention was paid to the preparation of a new Law on Textbooks that would make the publication of alternative textbooks and handbooks possible (Workbooks and the Collection of sources, etc.) for all levels of education. That is extremely important since only the textbooks printed in state institutions, such as the institution for textbooks and teaching material, were used in the teaching process. Basically the well prepared reform was not completely implemented. This refers particularly to the number of years of primary school which was planned to be increased to 9 years, this idea was abandoned in the meantime. Still, the most significant improvement has been made only recently by passing the Law on Textbooks and, to some extent, by the changes of the curriculum. These changes that were the responsibility of the Ministry of Education were followed by the creation of a new curriculum (that has still not been implemented), and the professional analysis of the existing textbooks by eminent historians from the History Department at the Faculty of Philosophy in Belgrade.

We contributed to this research with the results from our several-years’ observational studies of this matter from a completely different point of view; the students. They are certainly an inevitable factor in the process of drawing any sort of conclusion, especially when it comes to reforms of educational systems. It is interesting to analyze the structure of the existing educational system in Serbia in order to understand the problems that have been elaborated on in this work. It can best be perceived from the following scheme:

The basic structure of the system consists of several levels of education; pre-school education (from 3 to 6 years), primary education (divided into two levels, from 1st to 4th, and from 5th to 8th grade), then secondary education (from 1st to 4th grade) and university education. In this period special attention was paid to the education of national minorities and it seems correct to say that in this respect the standards that are applied in other European countries were met. The course of future reforms will most certainly be turned to primary level, i.e. the secondary educational system, so that the existing system, when it comes to the duration of education, will be in accordance with the educational systems in the European Union.

About History textbooks

During the last 10 years of the 20th century the textbooks were the subject of research of a big number of experts from different areas in most European countries. The results gathered from the research were presented on numerous international conferences dedicated to this problem. Bearing in mind objective differences that
exist in Europe when it comes to the quality of textbooks (both the quality of the content as well as the quality of the didactics) that are used in the teaching process, it is noticeable that the countries of South East Europe, following in the footsteps of those who were ahead of them, have taken considerable steps in order to improve the quality of important teaching material as textbooks, workbooks and other manuals. The results of the research from 1996, conducted in 29 states (Youth and History Survey) best show that this was inevitable. The research has shown that the students do not appreciate the existing textbooks (Joke Van Der Leev-Roord, 1999). Unfortunately, Serbia was not included in this report due to well known political reasons. Of course, it does not imply that similar research projects were not conducted in Serbia in that period. Our interests in doing the research on textbooks started in 1991. At the beginning the research included only two primary schools and one high-school5. We turned our attention to students, in other words to their assessment of the quality of history textbooks. We discussed the first results of this research while attending summer-school session at the George Eckert Institute in Braunshweig at the end of September 2001. Even today it gives significant support to the Serbian research. These first research projects show that due to the fact that textbooks were outdated, 70% of the students included in the survey gave negative notations to the textbooks. The basic remarks referred to texts being uninteresting, comprehensive, including too much information (years, names, personalities), there was a lack of illustrations and photographs, and the quality of printing (the black-and-white technique) was poor. On the other hand, by the end of 2001, a team of experts from the Faculty of Philosophy in Belgrade disclosed the results of the analysis of history textbooks for primary schools, high-schools and vocational schools. The students’ assessments were not included in these results, only the remarks given by expert historians. A general remark referred to the fact that the curriculum and the textbooks that were written in accordance with it are, in many respect, outdated, with numerous flaws and old fashioned estimates of historical events and processes, mainly those belonging to the 20th century. The problem is even more complex since the 1990 curriculum has been in use since then. In spite of the attempts to change the curriculum (1996, 2001 and 2005), the essence of the curriculum has not been significantly changed. Along with the textbooks, this is considered to be one of the most serious educational problems in Serbia in the last decade. But, although new changes have been prepared, necessary changes have not yet been made, except for abridging existing curricula somewhat. As far as history textbooks are concerned the majority of flaws were noticed in the history textbooks for the last year of primary school, i.e. high-school6.

5 It refers to "Pavle Savić " Primary school" Vukica Mitrović " Primary school and The tenth grammar school " Mihailo Pupin " in Belgrade. Two hundred and eighteen students form primary school and two hundred and sixty-two from the secondary school.

The analysis of these textbooks shows that political history issues are dominant. Hence the history textbook for the 8th grade comprises 39 teaching units that refer to political issues which comprises 88.6% of the textbook, while only 6 or 13.4% of the book refers to social history issues. A similar ratio can also be seen in the history textbook for the 4th grade of the high-school where: out of 66 teaching units only six comprise issues of social, economic and cultural history. These indicators speak for themselves and pervasively support our attitude that these textbooks are utterly uninteresting and totally boring and are not fit to improve the students’ knowledge of history. Another problem that was noticed during the analysis contributes to this conclusion. It refers to the number of teaching units that refer to general and national history that are present in the textbooks for primary school, i.e. high-school. Contrastive analysis shows that national history is presented in 29 teaching units, comprising 66% of the teaching material in the textbook for the 8th grade of primary school, while general history is presented in 15 teaching units, comprising 34%. A similar example can be found in the history textbook for the 4th grade of high-school, where the national history comprises 58% of the textbook, while general history comprises 42% of the textbook. Remarks regarding the style of the teaching units should be added to these indicators, as well as those that regard historiographic interpretation of the historic events from the Second World War and later.

Our previously mentioned findings referring to curriculum and history textbooks constituted a fruitful foundation for further research on this complex issue, which significantly hindered the process of modernization of the Serbian educational system. In our attempt to overcome the existing problems as fast as possible, during the next three years (from 2001 to 2004) we proceeded with the research using the new generation textbook for the 8th grade of primary school, i.e. 4th grade of high-school. We would like to use this opportunity to point out that only one textbook published by the State institute is being used in the teaching process.

---

8 Ibid, 113.
9 The textbooks are: D. Kovačević, D. Mikavica, B. Bešlin & B. Šimunović-Bešlin, History for the eight grade of primary school, Institute for Textbooks and Teaching Tools, Belgrade 2001, K. Nikolić, N. Žutić, M. Pavlović & Z. Špadijer, History for the fourth grade of secondary school, Institute for Textbooks and Teaching Tools, Belgrade 2002. Since 2005-6 another textbook has been included in the teaching process: History for the eight grade of primary school, Belgrade 2005, that will be included in the current research.
About The Results of the Survey

When discussing history teaching, it is necessary to present the age level and the number of history classes held per week in our educational institutions. This will be done in the following scheme:

**History as a school subject is taught in the following institutions:**

- In primary schools from 5th to 8th grade (in 5th grade 1 class, the others 2 classes per week)
- In secondary schools (grammar schools) from 1st to 4th grade (2 classes per week)
- In three-year vocational schools only in the 1st grade (3 classes per week)
- In four-year vocational schools the 1st and the 2nd grade (2 classes per week)

The existing curriculum is not suitable for the complexity of topics taught within one week. This problem is particularly emphasized with the 5th grade primary school students, who are taught ‘History of Ancient Times’ once a week. The problem is particularly emphasized because this is the first time they study history in school. Unfortunately, this problem has not been solved yet, which certainly bears a negative influence on the whole process of history teaching in primary school. We have covered one more aspect of history teaching in our research. We tried to find out to which degree certain subjects are popular among students, taking into consideration the subjects taught during the four-year education in primary and secondary schools. We were incited to do this by the fact that history was, according to a pilot research project including only a small sample of students in 1991, almost at the end of the popularity list, in the penultimate position. The result is mainly a consequence of, not only the teaching methods (which are traditional), but also of the quality of textbooks stipulated by The Ministry of Education for each particular educational level. The ranking of school subjects based on the students’ answers is shown in the following chart, first for primary, and in the second part of this paper, for secondary schools as well.

**Research results on the popularity of history in primary schools (the 8th grade).**

The number of schools included in this research project: 40
The number of students included in this research project: 950

School subjects according to their popularity

| 1. Geography | 8. Informatics/Computer science |
| 5. Arts | 12. Mathematics |
| 6. History | 13. Physics |
When we compare the data from the ranking list, we see that history has taken the sixth position. Compared with the previous period, it certainly is a significant improvement, however not entirely satisfactory. Still the fact that history is not among the most unpopular subjects any more (biology was the most unpopular one), shows that history teaching has significantly improved. On the other hand, the fact that for example French language was at the end of this ranking list is surprising. The reason for this is not only because French language teachers are not well prepared, although many have not had the opportunity to attend professional French language courses in France, but mainly because the students start learning the second language relatively late (the fifth grade). As far as the position of sciences is concerned (mathematics, physics and chemistry), this is to be expected because these students are unjustly burdened with a lot of duties (the number of classes, written assignments and control tests), which certainly influence their opinions.

Another result from our research refers to the assessment of history textbooks by the students. Even this problem was analyzed on two educational levels. The following table shows the results on primary level.

**Research results on the characteristics (positive and negative) of History textbooks for primary schools (the 8th grade).**

The number of schools included in this research: 40  
The number of students included in this research: 950

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive characteristics of the textbooks (53.6%)</th>
<th>Negative characteristics of the textbooks (46.4%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Illustrations and photographs</td>
<td>Long and comprehensive teaching units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear and comprehensible text</td>
<td>Lack of illustrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interesting texts</td>
<td>Uninteresting (boring) texts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concise teaching material</td>
<td>Unclear texts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comprehensive text with many details</td>
<td>The important things are not separated from the unimportant ones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions after a unit</td>
<td>Russian Revolution in 1917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanations of the unknown terms</td>
<td>Serbia and Montenegro by the end of the 19th and the beginning of the 20th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical charts</td>
<td>The world by the end of the 19th and the beginning of the 20th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yugoslavia between the two World Wars</td>
<td>There is no reminder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World War Two</td>
<td>Weak coherence between teaching units</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World War One</td>
<td>Not enough information of National history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biographies of historically important</td>
<td>Questions after texts of each teaching unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personalities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No positive characteristics</td>
<td>No answer -</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If data from the table are analyzed, one will see that 53.6% of the students assessed the existing History textbook positively, stating precisely their remarks, i.e. the positive and the negative characteristics of the textbook. Compared to the results of
previous research, these results can be regarded as a significant improvement, but
certainly not sufficiently satisfying. The analyses of the answers give space to some
serious thinking for potential authors of History textbooks. How can the deficiencies
the students pointed at and gave good reasons for be eliminated? How can the texts
the students assigned positive characteristics to be improved? In our opinion, it is
one of the important steps to be undertaken in order to write textbooks that will meet
the required standards that Joke Van Der Leew-Roard outlined in her interesting
study (J. Van Der Leew-Roard, 1999, 123-124).

This work has also observed and dealt with this problem in Serbian secondary
schools. The same problem has been present for years both on this level and on
lower levels, i.e. the levels of primary education. The problem also comprises the
fact that schools are not equipped with modern teaching material, and furthermore,
that only one History textbook is being used on this level. It surely influenced the
students’ remarks that they made during our research. We will first comment on the
ranking of subjects according to their popularity by the 4th grade students of
secondary schools. The results are shown in the following table.

Research results on the popularity of History in secondary schools (4th grade).
The number of schools included in the research - 45
The number of students included in the research - 1020

Ranking of school subjects according to their popularity:

1. Physical education
2. Serbian language
3. English language
4. Philosophy
5. Informatics
6. Sociology
7. History
8. Mathematics
9. French language
10. Biology
11. Physics
12. The Constitution and the Law
13. Chemistry

If data from the table are analyzed, one will see that History is placed as number
seven among the other subjects. This position may be considered as an
improvement, compared to the previous period, similar to the case of primary
education, since this subject also was at the mere end of the list according to the
students’ popularity ranking.

The students’ written notations of the History textbooks show that there has been a
considerable improvement, i.e. the textbooks standing were considerably better. This
can be extracted from the following table.

Research results on the characteristics (the positive and the negative ones) of
History textbooks in secondary schools (grammar schools) – the 4th grade

The number of schools included in the research: 45
The number of students included in the research: 1020
If data from this table are analyzed, one will see that that 52.8% of students assessed the textbook positively, which may be considered a considerable improvement compared to the previous period, although not sufficient, bearing in mind the initiated process of modernization of the Serbian educational system. In our opinion, the students’ remarks, although often contradictory, can be useful to the future authors of textbooks, as well as to those who want to start writing workbooks and other forms of written teaching material that can be used for History teaching in secondary schools.

On the other hand, a much more significant problem is present in History teaching in vocational schools where the textbook written 12 years ago is still in use. Our attention has been directed to four-year vocational schools where History is taught only in the first (from prehistory to the middle of 19th century) and the second grade (from the middle of the 19th century to the end of the 20th century). The research includes 10 schools and 245 students. The conclusions are more than disturbing because 51.8% of the students included in this research commented negatively on the History textbook that was in use. The analysis of their answers shows that they mostly made remarks about the fact that a considerable period of time was covered in the textbook, and so the texts were too comprehensive and included too much historical information. There were also made negative remarks about the style of the History textbook, as well as the lack of illustrations and the dominance of political history issues.

---

10 M.Perović & B.Smijanić, *History for the first grade of four-year vocational schools.* Institute for Textbooks and Teaching Tools, Belgrade 1993. A new textbook is being used only since this year.
Based on these findings, as well as on the remarks of the textbooks mentioned previously, a precious source of knowledge is provided that can be a good basis for future research in this very important segment of education.

Conclusions

The comprehensive analysis of the collected material (surveys) has demonstrated that History, measured by its popularity in school, ranks as number six or seven in a group of fourteen subjects, which is considered to be a solid basis for further research into this issue.

If we study the students’ responses more deeply, the students have rightfully pointed out a number of flaws. The dominant ones are the selection of topics (mostly) from political History, extensiveness of the basic text of units, the language used, the amount of factualism which suppresses and does not encourage thinking, lack of sources (posters, caricatures, etc.) which would supplement the basic text etc. On the other hand, the positive characteristics, which refer to the increased number of units from General History, the choice of photographs of historical persons and monuments as well as historical maps, have been singled out. The importance of these findings attained after years of research widely exceeds school limits. In our opinion, they outline a direction for future authors of History textbooks, not only in Serbia, but also in the rest of Southeast Europe.

The change of curriculum is one of the preferential missions in the act of creating new textbooks. Serbian History textbooks, according to the evaluation of students in primary and secondary school, have not fulfilled the basic academic and pedagogical standards of modern textbooks. It is obvious that one of the reasons is due to neglecting students’ opinions of the books they meet daily, opinions that are brought forward in this study. Before creating new textbooks, it is necessary to study the historiographic and didactic value of this educational aid more closely. This is the best and the shortest way to produce modern textbooks that are to become important backing assets in the modernization of education.

References


Producing and Adapting Educational Materials with and for the Elderly in Rural and Urban Contexts

Jesús Rodríguez Rodríguez and Helena Zapico Barbeito

Introduction

The present experience was carried out in the Faculty of Education Sciences, University of Santiago de Compostela. It was part of the 3rd year course, “Teaching for Adult Education,” for the degree in Social Education, that is, the education which is conducted outside of schools or which varies from conventional school methodology. (Examples of settings where social educators work include: socio-cultural entertainment, work with marginalized groups, elderly education, activities organised by town councils, and others)

The activity described here was done in collaboration with a variety of schools, associations, institutions and social groups in the autonomous region of Galicia (Spain). This experience was motivated by our desire to address the needs of the elderly from a didactic perspective as well as by our interest in analysing the role of didactic materials in non-formal education contexts (as fundamental elements in educational processes). The production and use of educational materials for the elderly was an opportunity for teaching and learning with elderly people and an excellent occasion for Social Education students to act as real co-ordinators of initiatives. The approximately 60 initiatives stemming from the course, “Teaching for Adult Education,” were an opportunity to extend the usefulness of the university beyond the classroom. These initiatives constituted a contribution because they address social issues that are increasingly important to the elderly population such as loneliness, use of free time, cultural and socio-affective deficiencies, physical and psycho-social limitations, educational limitations, and so on. Furthermore, another fundamental objective, where our elderly population has a vital role to play, involved the recovery and preservation of the linguistic and cultural heritage of Galicia. The practical application of the initiatives spurred an intense collaborative effort among a variety of education professionals and was an enriching experience both personally and professionally.

In order to better understand our proposal, we should keep in mind the following considerations regarding didactics:

– School education is the preferred scope of action for Didactics, however, it can be said that Didactics occurs anytime that there is an intentional teaching/learning process, and that, nowadays, this occurs in educational settings outside of schools.

1 This Experience was awarded the First Prize for Educational Innovation by the University of Santiago de Compostela.
– Education makes use of didactic means and resources.
– It is difficult to conceive of teaching/learning processes without didactic materials.
– The resources present, in turn, ideology, values and socio-economic connotations.

Development of proposals

First of all, each of the educators was given some general guidelines for the elaboration of materials with and for the elderly. They were asked to include the following in their materials proposals: title, context, aims, contents, strategies, materials development, evaluation, results of carrying out the project, conclusions, bibliography and sources consulted.

In addition, a training session was held to clarify what it means to produce materials with and for elderly people in order to address problems. Afterward, students contacted associations and institutions in order to identify needs regarding educational resources for working with elderly people. Then, students went on to produce each of the materials. The materials proposed included a final assessment section for students to comment on what the experience had meant to them and to the people who the activity addressed. Some sessions were recorded on video for later viewing and analysis. The students were also asked to keep a journal in order to be able to have adequate knowledge of the elaboration process.

At the time of putting the projects into practice, we encouraged the authors to keep in mind not only the requests from the elderly people, but also differences in learning styles, work habits, and time availability. We specifically emphasised the fact that there was no need to think that each project had to address a broad range of subjects. Instead, it was emphasised that the experience with a single grandparent at home was just as valuable as the experience with all the members of an entire association. The projects were introduced at the beginning of the semester and developed throughout the course. The students were asked to identify contexts for work with the elderly, especially those people in a situation of social risk (i.e., isolation, marginalised, dependence).

The following issues were also kept in mind: the rigor and up-to-date nature of the contents, analysis of values and attitudes which are transmitted, openness of the material, diversity of materials, care for formal aspects, coherence with respect to institutional projects, etc.

The main objective of the activity focussed on the elaboration of materials adapted to the socio-cultural context of the elderly, keeping in mind that the scarcity of specific educational resources means that the social educator carries most of the responsibility for the dynamics of the activity. The following aims were also addressed:
– To make didactic materials available, appropriate for needs and activities of the elderly.
– To make materials available specifically adapted (for example, many of the materials used up to now to teach elderly people to read in Spain are the same as those used to teach primary school children in schools).
– Participation or support by the university in the activities carried out with the elderly in our society.

Generally speaking, the following were the materials proposed and elaborated;

– Materials elaborated by the students themselves for use with elderly.
– Materials elaborated jointly by students and the elderly
– In some cases, adaptation of existing materials to the characteristics of the elderly.
– It is important to remember that generally the materials are used as support for some type of project or work initiative involving the elderly.

Regarding the elderly context, it is important to remember that materials are not currently adapted or contextualised for the reality of the elderly and they are not normally mentioned in the resources.

**Description of materials**

Overall, the materials produced can be categorised into seven groups according to the general subject area they dealt with:

- **Transmission of the cultural heritage of the elderly:** these materials focused on preserving the cultural and experience of the elderly, as well as Galician cultural folklore. There are proposals involving such things as the elaboration of books based on the life experiences and memories of the elderly, the creation of a cookbook between grandmother and granddaughter, and the production of a magazine of stories set in a residence for elderly people.

- **Inter-generational relationships:** a diverse type of materials with a variety of formats aimed at fostering inter-generational contact between youths and elderly. These materials include such things as traditions, popular tales, legends, and descriptions of farm activities.

- **Memory stimulation:** the materials in this category are aimed at exercising and improving memory. To this end, a variety of techniques, dynamics and strategies are employed.

- **Materials for health/ physical exercise:** these resources are produced in order to foster the acquisition of healthier habits and life styles by applying relaxation techniques, improving autonomy in the organization of taking medications, physical fitness, nutrition, etc…

- **Cognitive skills/ basic education:** these materials are directed toward “discovering” new cultural and educational interests for the elderly, which provide them with a
wide variety of knowledge and experiences for the purpose of improving basic cultural deficiencies that may exist. It is the case, for example, with the experience “Grandparents, what do we learn today?” in which a Social Education student designs a program for her grandparents involving literacy, training workshops on floral issues, informational talks, visits, and so on. Other materials give the elderly an introduction to the analysis of the influence of the mass media, ecology and environmental education, the use of the Euro, etc…

- New technologies: these resources are meant to bring the participants into contact with the world of computers and internet, as well as the use of appliances and a variety of electronic devices.

- Likewise, some of the materials designed and employed included activities and proposals for making educational use of free and leisure time.

**Conclusion**

We go on to describe some of the main implications of the project for students in Social Education – co-ordinators and promoters – for the elderly participants and for the groups and associations to which they belong.

The creation and application of these resources has been a truly new and enriching experience for students training for a career in the field of Social Education. The design, adaptation, and use of these materials for the elderly has allowed the authors to reconfirm the belief that old age is not simply a time of decline and deterioration, as is too often thought in our society. Instead, it is a process that varies according to each person’s previous possibilities and development. It is also a time to promote, maintain and develop new capacities, learning, and enriching life experiences.

With respect to the elderly people who have participated and the institutions where the experiences were carried out, we can say that—depending on the nature, the characteristics and the specific sense of each material—they have encountered feelings and experiences that also have influenced their lives in different ways: some have received training in a variety of areas (new technologies, the euro, the mass media, literacy, therapeutic strategies and techniques, relaxation, etc…); for others it has meant participating in experiences of inter-generational relationships, entertainment, and others have been able to develop a variety of skills and capacities (physical, cognitive, memory, etc…); and others have discovered new ways of using their free time for educational purposes.

Without doubt, all the participants experienced a considerable increase in their self-esteem. Their self image has been enriched insofar as the new training has enabled them to discover capacities they did not know they had. Their potential has been raised and new avenues of personal fulfilment have been opened. The elderly people involved expressed opinions such as the following: “this isn’t possible”, “this activity isn’t for us,” “that is for young people”, “I’m too old for that”, “I don’t need to learn any more”. After participation in the activity, however, many students heard...
elderly people express another type of opinion: “It’s just a question of getting started, in the end you can do it”, “who could have told me that at this age I would still be able to learn so much”.

Finally, it is worthwhile to remember that carrying out our experiences such as these are not free of problems. Undoubtedly, the varied nature of the proposals is personally and professionally enriching, but, at the same time, it implies a degree of difficulty in the follow-up and evaluation process. I must also point out that the structural quality of the materials could be better in some instances; nevertheless, we would rather emphasise the didactic significance of the proposals, the work in term of reflection on the part of the elderly, the elaboration, adaptation and application of the materials, etc.

In general terms, the following are some of the main conclusions that can be drawn from the experience. “Social Educators” learned to identify contexts and needs for materials in contexts that were not strictly scholastic. They tested and put into practice with elderly people some of the potential provided by new technologies. Furthermore, intergenerational collaboration habits between elderly people and activity co-ordinators were developed. This activity has helped to improve the conditions and quality of life of the elderly people involved.
Since the late 1980s, as a result of higher demand for quality education, experts have paid more attention to the issues of efficiency and quality of education. In several countries experts have concluded that in spite of increasing expenditure on public education the level of education funding is insufficient and does not show a significantly upward trend. Therefore, theorists as well as practitioners have been searching for a solution to this unfavourable state of affairs. International surveys conducted under the auspices of the International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA), and later on also the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development’s (OECD) Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA) aimed at evaluating students’ achievements and measure their readiness for life. In addition to international comparisons of educational achievements, the outcomes of these studies have been analysed to indicate which direction the development of education should follow. Slovakia’s results in these international surveys and comparison with other countries have contributed to the ongoing discussion about the quality of education.

Increased attention has been paid also to quality of textbooks and to creation of new textbook policy. As a response, the National Institute for Education (NIE), in cooperation with the Open Society Institute (OSI) based in Budapest, has carried out a long-term project entitled ‘Textbook Policy in Slovakia’. Its main objective was to propose a new textbook policy and strategies how to improve the quality of textbooks and to increase the efficiency of state funding of textbooks. The project began in 2001 with a review and detailed analysis of all aspects of textbook policy in Slovakia. The whole project was highly participative and representatives of the Ministry of Education, local self-governing bodies, publishers, teachers, experts in individual school subjects as well as students were involved in the project at its individual stages. The final document proposed a set of actions and recommendations to improve individual components of textbooks policy, including establishing an independent textbook approval committee, streamlining the process of textbook publishing, an improved system of collecting orders from schools and finally, a more efficient system of textbook distribution.

The main task of the second phase of the project was to prepare a new textbook approval and evaluation system. As a result, a new set of criteria and evaluation methods has been developed to be used for: 1) the evaluation of sample manuscripts in a tender process; 2) the approval and publication of completed manuscripts, and 3) the evaluation of textbooks used at schools. The process of development and piloting of the new textbook evaluation criteria took place between 2002 and 2005. Since 2006 the new criteria have been used in practice.
Due to the space limitation for this article, we focus primarily on the process of developing and piloting the new evaluation criteria. We also provide only a brief summary of methods used. 

**Definition of textbook quality and key categories**

At the beginning, we defined the quality of textbooks based on social needs, general educational objectives and up-to-date pedagogical and psychological theories of learning. The contemporary theories of learning that are utilised in Slovakia place emphasis on the role of a student in the active acquisition of new knowledge. Thus, quality textbooks not only serve as the main source of knowledge, they also need to help in developing the student’s personality, in respecting his/her individual skills, stimulating interest in learning, and in supporting interactivity.

On the basis of these identified attributes of quality, 6 key evaluation categories (KEC) were derived: compliance with principal pedagogical documents, personal development, content selection, social correctness, methodological approach, and visual layout.

These KEC had to be further elaborated and quantified. Therefore, we continued with the identification of main functions from which a system of specific criteria was derived.

**Textbook functions as a basis for the creation of evaluation criteria**

From identifying the 6 KEC, we moved to textbook functions. We looked at the extent a particular textbook complies with the identified functions. Textbook experts state that the quality of a textbook is determined by the extent to which it fulfils didactical functions. We agree with Arno Reints who argues that: “the assessment of the quality of a certain product means that we have a clear idea about the functions of the product... The instructional functions of teaching materials depend on various aspects: their target group, curricular area, textbook type, the manner in which teachers intend to use these materials.” (Reints, 2002). Rogiers and Gerard (1998) also claim that textbook functions depend on users, textbook focus as well as the environment in which the textbook was created. According to Jaan Mikk, the most important function of a textbook is to motivate students to learn (Mikk, 2000, 17). These and other experts (e.g. Zujev, 1986) have broadened the scope of didactical functions of textbooks and ranked them in order of importance.

When assessing the quality of textbooks the NIE checks to what extent they fulfil the following functions/roles: to provide appropriate information, to acknowledge and encourage different interpretations, to motivate students to learn, to develop student’s social skills, to develop personal competencies, to develop various learning

---

1 Readers interested to gain a more detailed information about the whole project or about its specific aspects should contact the authors at maria.nogova@statpedu.sk or jhuttova@osi.hu
approaches, to encourage student’s self-learning, to provide instructions for lessons, and to support assessment and self assessment.

**Identification and Hierarchy of Criteria**

Based on the above theories and knowledge, the NIE prepared a set of clearly formulated functions that a textbook should serve in the contemporary educational process. 18 evaluation criteria were subsequently derived from these functions. Individual criteria are crucial for the overall quality of the textbook, but they do not all have the same level of importance. Therefore, in the next step we classified these criteria into different levels. Based on consensus among internal and external pedagogical experts, a two-dimensional hierarchy of criteria was created (Table 1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Levels, Scores</th>
<th>Categories</th>
<th>Levels</th>
<th>Scores</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Content correct, accurate and up-to-date with disciplines</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Text appropriate to student age, Core content clearly defined, Compliance with course standard</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Usefulness in everyday life, Graphic presentation of text</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Student readiness to integrate into broader community, Didactical elaboration of content, System of questions and tasks</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Motivational and aesthetical quality of illustrations, Presentation of content</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Compliance of pictorial material with text, Balance between core and supplementary content, Logical structure of Content</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of levels was not determined beforehand. The hierarchical arrangement is not cumulative. The main aspect affecting the placement of a certain criterion into the hierarchy was how much the quality of education is affected if the particular criterion is not fulfilled. The criteria are not disjunctive, but rather constitute an interconnected, overlapping system, which every textbook should comply with in a complex way. The criteria at the horizontal level are equivalent, while those at the
vertical level are ranked into 6 levels. At Level 1, the lowest score is 3, which is a figure that still allows evaluation with a sufficient degree of sensitivity. The purpose of the horizontal and vertical hierarchical arrangement of the textbook quality criteria was to create conditions for objective quantitative evaluation.

**Detailed specification and scoring of criteria**

In terms of content, the criteria are defined on the basis of requirements that specify their quality. The maximum score for each criterion is given in Table 1. How much the requirement for each criterion is fulfilled is specified in more detail by indicators for the minimum, average, and maximum value. In the future it will be necessary to modify and set indicators not for boundary values, which are relatively unambiguous, but rather for internal intermediate values. For example, in the case of the criterion of “Usefulness in everyday life” (maximum score 6), indicators for the values 5-4 and 2-1 would be more beneficial.

**Scaling individual criteria - Example**

**Category 2: Personality development**

**Criterion 2.3 Usefulness in everyday life**

**Requirement:** Content (text, tasks and illustrations) is elaborated in such a way that it provides examples from real life, and develops student’s abilities and competencies to appropriately solve real-life problems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Real-life issues are fully and consistently incorporated in the whole textbook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-4</td>
<td>Text enables fulfilment of this requirement but is not systematically applied across to whole textbook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The textbook totally lacks real-life applications or uses inappropriate examples.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grouping of criteria into key evaluation categories (KEC)**

The above mentioned criteria were grouped into 6 KEC determined at the beginning of the process. The overall weigh for each KEC is a sum of maximum scores for individual criteria specified in Table 1.

I. The key category “Compliance with Principal Pedagogical Documents” contains the following criteria: compliance with the curriculum, the logical structure of subject matter, and compliance with the course standard. The overall weigh of this category is 17 points.

II. The key category “Personal Development – Values, Competencies, and Skills” contains the following criteria: development of students’ basic skills, student integration into the broader community, and subject matter usefulness in everyday life. The overall weight of this category is 18 points.
III. The key category “Content Selection” includes: technical and factual accuracy of information, conciseness of content in terms of elementary subject matter, and balance between elementary and additional content. The overall weight of this category is 18 points.

IV. The key category “Methodological Approach” includes the following criteria: stylistic characteristics of text, content accessing methods, presentation of educational content in terms of learning and instruction, and the system and formulation of questions and tasks. The total weight of this category is 24 points.

V. The key category “Graphic Layout” contains four criteria: graphic presentation of text, clear graphical presentation of educational content, matching pictorial material and text, quality of illustrations in terms of motivation and their aesthetic value. The weight of this category is 17 points.

VI. The current globalisation of the world goes hand in hand with the issue of ensuring mutual respect between people in society. Therefore, a separate category was created, entitled “Social Correctness” and containing one criterion – respecting social correctness, with the maximum score of 6 points.

The maximum aggregate score for all 6 KEC is 100 points (Table 2). In order for a textbook to be evaluated positively in terms of its quality, it must achieve the 60% level in each category.

Table 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of Key Evaluation Categories</th>
<th>Max. score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Content and pedagogy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Compliance with principal pedagogical documents</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Personal development – values, competencies, skills</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Content selection</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Methodological approach</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Graphic layout</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Social correctness</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Checking the validity of criteria

In order for the above textbook quality evaluation criteria to be implemented in practice, it was necessary to prove that they were a valid and reliable measurement instrument. To determine the validity of the criteria in terms of their content, we asked education experts, teachers and subject specialists to review, test and evaluate
them. By means of a combination of different methods (expert analysis, questionnaires, interviews, and the testing of criteria on finished textbooks) we sought to find out if all aspects of textbook quality were covered by the criteria. Also, we aimed to verify whether the results of the quantitative evaluation based on the criteria (scoring 6 KEC) corresponded with the qualitative evaluation provided by individual evaluators (verbal feedback and written comments). To ensure the general validity of the criteria for all subjects, for testing purposes we selected textbooks from various subject groups: Slovak Language, Biology, Geography, Chemistry, ABC-book for the visually impaired, and Music.

The individual criteria were repeatedly modified on the basis of these findings. After several rounds of piloting we prepared the final set of evaluation criteria, which have been used in practice since 2006.

**Determining the reliability of criteria**

In order to be able to declare that textbook evaluation is objective, we must be confident that all evaluators have understood the criteria in the same way. Reliability of scales and indicators for individual criteria (described earlier) was tested on 4 already published textbooks and 11 manuscripts (for 3 school subjects). 29 evaluators in total participated in this stage. Most attention was paid to evaluating the manuscripts because of the fact that there are at least seven evaluators per manuscript in a tender process. A higher degree of consensus among these 7 evaluators and their evaluation results indicated a higher degree of reliability.

Several methods were used to determine reliability:

a) Pearson’s Correlation Coefficient was used to determine a mutual relation between pairs of evaluators and their reliability. The resultant correlation coefficients were within the range of 0.726-0.975 with most of them within 0.726-0.859. This indicates a high degree of correspondence between the scores given by the pairs of evaluators.

b) Comparison of the variation range between the maximum and minimum assigned score as well as comparison of the positive and negative evaluation of a textbook according to a certain criterion served to determine the degree of correspondence among all evaluators (at least 7 evaluators per manuscript in a tender process).

c) Cronbach’s alpha scale used to determine the reliability of individual criteria served as a basis for modifying and reformulating the indicators.

The analysis of measurements showed which modifications needed to be taken, but these did not significantly change the overall framework of the criteria. By means of these modifications, certain internal specifications of the criteria were fine-tuned. At the same time, by means of the analysis of quantitative as well as qualitative methods, some criteria were excluded from the final version. The first version contained 24 criteria, while the final, simplified version has 18 of them.
The combination of various methods confirmed the high overall validity and reliability of the criteria. The new set of evaluation criteria and their specifications were positively received by evaluators. They were welcome as a useful instrument for a more objective textbook evaluation. Evaluators were pleased by the fact that the criteria allowed complex assessment of all aspects of a textbook. They emphasised that the new system could appropriately guide their work while leaving sufficient room for additional recommendations and personal comments.

The new system for the objective evaluation of textbooks was also welcomed by publishers and authors of new textbooks. The criteria are available to all parties concerned, which contributes to greater transparency and credibility of the textbook approval process. The next necessary step is to completely separate the approval process from the Ministry of Education and set up an independent committee with full decision-making powers. However, political support for this step is presently lacking.

**Conclusions and summary**

On the basis of the experimental testing of the criteria in practice, which lasted for several years, and the analysis of evaluation results, we have finalised the textbook quality evaluation criteria and made them available for use at all stages of the approval process concerning new textbooks and also for the evaluation of already published textbooks.

The process of creating new evaluation criteria has shown several important factors necessary for the successful introduction of a new, more objective and transparent textbook approval system.

First, it has initiated a debate about the quality of textbooks and the education system as a whole. As a real education reform has not yet taken place in Slovakia, there is no generally accepted definition of the quality of education. At the early stage of identifying the basic evaluation criteria, it was shown that the overall concept of education was highly needed. Without clearly articulated new education policies and laws, changes in textbook policies are fragmented and partial. The new set of the criteria reflect the existing textbook policies as well as the current state of research and pedagogical theories in Slovakia.

Second, foreign experience has played an important role in the whole process as Slovakia lacked experience in several areas. Especially textbook research has been very much neglected over the past decade. Contacts and materials obtained through IARTEM have proven really invaluable. Through the Open Society Institute, the National Institute for Education has gained access to several years’ experience of other countries in developing and implementing new textbook policies. Thus, the NIE has obtained a database of textbook policy documents, textbook projects and set of criteria used in a number of countries. These materials have served as a source of inspiration as well as a test group in the course of preparing its own system.
Third, the whole process of creating, experimental testing, and gradual implementation of the criteria took almost five years to complete. Throughout the process, the NIE cooperated with all parties concerned. Thus, not only necessary feedback, but also broader stakeholder’ support were ensured. Any change in textbook policy in countries with state funding for textbooks is always closely monitored and may meet with strong resistance.

The NIE has drafted a number of recommendations for performing other necessary changes to the system of approval, publication, and financing of textbooks. Some of these measures have not won necessary political support to date. We hope that the overall reform of the content of education will be launched in the near future and that the documents drawn up by the NIE will be part of this reform.

References
Roegiers, Xavier & Gerard, Francois Marie. 1998. Razrabotka i analyz škoľnych učebnikov (Elaboration and Analysis of School Textbooks). Vilnius, AB OVO.
The Textbook Selection in Primary and Secondary Schools

Zuzana Sikorova

The paper reports on the research concerning the textbook selection process in Czech primary and secondary schools, carried out at the University of Ostrava in 2004. The Czech Republic belongs to those European countries where the Ministry of Education still approves lists of textbooks. It means - in the case of primary and lower secondary school textbooks - that only those with the ‘approval clause’ are free of charge. Nevertheless, the lists of approved textbooks include a relatively great number of items. Thus the final solution of textbook selection remains on schools and teachers. The conception of a teacher as the key agent in textbook adoption process was the starting point of our investigation.

The research problems of textbook adoption and selection fall into the great research group of ‘the development of textbooks’ (Johnsen, 1993, 28) or ‘process-oriented textbook research’ (Weinbrenner, 1992, 21). The investigations in this field are relatively frequent in the USA (e.g. Muther, Farr and Tulley in 1980s; Woodward, Tyson in 1990s), but quite rare in the European educational research. E. B. Johnsen’s monograph from 1993 is the significant but rather rare information resource.

If we summarise the findings of our research, we can claim as follows: the processes of the textbook selection and adoption are not explored sufficiently; in spite of that it is possible to state two main conclusions:

a) The idea of an optimum textbook is false. It is very difficult to specify general views which would qualify the selection of one textbook and deny the other. The textbooks work in the frames of various educational conceptions declaring different demands (Westbury, 1994; Bamberger, 1994; Johnsen, 1993).

b) The decision on textbook selection must be made in the light of specific characteristics of their users – students and teachers (Grant, 1990; Westbury, 1994; Bamberger et al.,1998; etc.). It means that teachers play a key role in the process of decision-making. It is only the particular teacher who knows the particular conditions under which the textbook will work in the class.

Research aims and methods

The research investigation was carried out among primary and secondary school teachers in Ostrava – a region in the Czech Republic. The main aim of the study was to identify and describe the role of teachers in textbook selection and evaluation in
The research sample was represented by 784 teachers of general education subjects in Ostrava – region. The sample was selected on the base of stratified choice and includes 5 groups of respondents: primary school teachers, lower-secondary school teachers and the teachers from 3 types of upper-secondary schools (general upper-secondary, secondary technical and vocational schools). We applied a questionnaire method with multiple-choice questions and scales; an individual semi-structured interview was applied in pilot and pre-research studies. The investigation was focused especially on the following issues:

- What is the role of teachers and other participants in textbook selection process in primary and secondary schools?
- To what extent do the external factors influence the process of textbook selection?
- What are the teachers’ needs concerning textbook selection and evaluation?

The role of teachers and other people

We used a few questions of different formulations in order to find out the textbook selection strategies; the first one was: “How were the textbooks you are working with selected?” The respondents quoted particular titles and the ways they were chosen. Thus the data of 2523 textbooks were gathered. All presented versions of answers may be summed up into two categories:

1. The teacher had an opportunity to participate in selection of the textbook he/she was working with – it includes the following multiple-choice variants
   - ‘own choice’;
   - ‘in co-operation with the colleagues’;

2. The teacher had no opportunity to participate in selection of the textbook he/she was working with – it includes the following versions
   - ‘the decision of headmaster (or subject head teacher)’;
   - ‘the textbook had been already used’;
   - ‘I do not know how the textbook was selected’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participation</th>
<th>Number of textbooks</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Participated</td>
<td>1852</td>
<td>73.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not participated</td>
<td>671</td>
<td>26.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2523</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In other items we asked the respondents to describe the situation in their schools – who took part in textbook selecting process in their schools and who decided the textbooks to be selected (see table 2).
Table 2. Decision-making on textbook selection in schools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant of response</th>
<th>All responses</th>
<th>The only response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>frequency</td>
<td>percentage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every individual teacher</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>15.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers together</td>
<td>655</td>
<td>83.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headmaster</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>20.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject head teacher</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>19.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not know</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most of the teachers took part in textbook selection in their schools: 73% textbooks the respondents were working with had been selected with their participation. Group decision-making was the most frequent way of textbook selection in schools in our sample (84% of respondents); 15% of respondents confirmed the individual choice. The role of headmasters was important as well. First of all they approved of the chosen textbooks - almost 50% of respondents confirmed the fact, and not only in a formal way; was formal approval indicated by 23% of respondents. Furthermore, 20% of teachers claimed that headmasters had taken part right in the textbook selection process. Nevertheless, an authoritative decision-making was not typical - only 5% of respondents asserted that the headmasters alone made the decisions. The differences between primary and lower-secondary schools on the one hand and upper-secondary schools on the other were proved: primary and lower-secondary school headmasters took part in selection more frequently (30%) than their colleagues in upper-secondary schools.

Statistic analysis showed that teacher’s opportunity to select the textbook for his/her teaching had varied depending on

- the length of teacher’s practice: two groups of younger teachers with (0-5) and (6-10) years of teaching practice participated in textbook selection less frequently than other groups with longer practice;
- the school type: the primary school teachers participated in textbook selection less frequently than teachers from other 4 groups – more than 44% of textbooks they used had been selected without their participation;
- the teacher’s qualification: it was no surprise that fully qualified teachers had taken part in textbook selection more frequently than non-qualified respondents.

The most important issue we dealt with in this investigation was to verify if there is a relationship between ‘teacher’s opportunity to participate in textbook selection’ and ‘teacher’s satisfaction with this textbook’. The hypothesis was formulated:

\[ H_1: \] The teacher’s satisfaction with the textbook he/she uses in the lessons depends on his/her opportunity to participate in the textbook selection.

In the course of the research an additional hypothesis was elaborated:
H 2: The teachers who selected the textbook individually are more satisfied with it than the teachers who selected it as members of groups.

The respondents expressed the degree of their satisfaction in 5-point scale, where ‘1’ meant ‘not satisfied at all’ and ‘5’ ‘fully satisfied’. The teachers evaluated the textbooks they were using in given school year 2003/2004 quite highly: mean scale value was 3.68 (standard deviation = 1.06, median = 4, number of evaluations = 2523). Both null hypotheses were tested with one-way analysis of variance (H 1: the value of test statistic $F_{0.05}(1;2422) = 69$; probability $p= 0.0001$; H 2: $F_{0.05}(1;1771) = 13.53$; $p= 0.00024$). Both hypotheses have been proved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree of satisfaction</th>
<th>Teacher's participation in textbook selection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>individual choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arithmetic mean</td>
<td>3.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>standard deviation</td>
<td>1.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The influence of external factors**

‘External factors’ in our work meant social, economic and other backgrounds, the circumstances that accompany the textbook selection while the textbook characteristics were considered to be ‘internal factors’. We offered 8 external factors and the respondents had to score each of them in the 5-point scale: ‘1’ meant minimal influence, ‘5’ maximal influence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor order</th>
<th>arithmetic mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Ministry of Education approval clause</td>
<td>3.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sufficiency of information regarding books</td>
<td>3.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. State of school finances</td>
<td>3.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Commercial leaflets from publishers</td>
<td>3.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Socio-economic status of students families</td>
<td>2.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Parents’ willingness to share costs</td>
<td>2.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Students’ opinions on textbooks</td>
<td>2.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Opportunity to sell used textbooks</td>
<td>2.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The most important external factor influencing the textbook selection was ‘approval clause’ from the Ministry of Education. It is understandable in primary and lower-secondary schools because the state subventions are allocated only to approve textbooks. But it was the most influencing factor for general secondary school teachers and secondary technical school teachers, too. The approval clause seems to be regarded as a sort of quality guarantee or at least as a guarantee of correspondence with obligatory curricular documents.
The orders of factors according to primary and lower-secondary school teachers were the same and their correlations with the orders according to general secondary and secondary technical school teachers were quite high, too (Pearson’s coefficient \( r_p = 0.7 \)). But vocational school teachers rated the influence of external factors in an entirely different way. The two most influencing factors were according to them ‘the socio-economic status of students’ families’ and ‘the willingness of parents to share the costs’. It is not surprising if we consider the fact that students often come from socially disadvantaged backgrounds. Nevertheless, it is important not to subordinate the textbook quality to its price and to search for some ways of help. It is also symptomatic that ‘students’ opinions on textbooks’ took the 7th or the last place: 30% of respondents rated it with minimal score ‘1’ and other 20% score ‘2’; the mean value was 2.18. The users, who the textbooks are intended for first of all, have almost no influence on the textbooks they will be working with for the whole year.

**Teachers’ needs and interests concerning textbook selection**

One of the research purposes was to find out what needs concerning textbook selection the teachers had, that means:

- if they had enough information available and where this information came from;
- if they would welcome any help, possibly what kind of help could be useful for them.

**Sufficiency of information on textbooks**

It can be said that the respondents regarded themselves as well-informed: 67% of them chose the answer ‘yes’, moreover 17% ‘definitely yes’, only 11% answered ‘no’, 1% ‘no, not at all’. Statistically important differences were proved between younger and older teachers. The groups of respondents with (0-5) and (6-10) years of practice regarded themselves as less informed than the groups with longer practice.

This begs the question of what kind of information the teachers have got. In our opinion teachers should have both an overview of newly edited titles for their subjects and some ideas of basic qualities of these textbooks. Almost never they have an opportunity to try out the textbooks in their lessons and mostly they don’t have enough time and energy to analyse e.g. 5 parallel textbooks in detail. That is why we considered the issue of information resources to be the key problem and asked where the teachers obtained the data on textbooks from (see table 5).
Table 5. Information resources concerning textbooks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information resource</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Commercial leaflets from publishers</td>
<td>589</td>
<td>75.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Visits to bookstores</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>64.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Colleagues’ opinions</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>49.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Textbook exhibitions</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>41.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Dealers from publishing houses</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>38.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Educational journals</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>36.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Professional teachers organisations</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>25.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Other resources</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Commercial materials on textbooks’ from publishers were the most important information resources for teachers from all 5 types of schools: for about 67% of respondents from primary and lower-secondary schools, 82% from upper-secondary schools. ‘Textbook exhibitions’ organised by publishing houses are almost as important as ‘commercial leaflets’ for primary and lower-secondary teachers (62%). ‘Dealers’ who personally attend the schools took the 3rd place in order. It is quite clear from these data what influence the publishing houses exert upon the textbooks that are actually used at schools.

In the Czech Republic there is no institution or organisation for systematic evaluation of textbooks and other teaching materials. Some reviews are published in professional and educational journals. Maybe that is why only 36% of respondents used the ‘educational journals’ when looking for the information.

The need for help in textbook selection

Most of the respondents (61%) would welcome some kind of help in the process of textbook evaluation and selection, about 33% did not need any help. It begs the question to what extent the teachers are able to evaluate and select the textbooks and whether they have the necessary knowledge and skills. In the Czech Republic there are no special courses. Teacher students can gain some knowledge on textbooks during their studies; teachers in-service can be naturally experienced in evaluating textbooks. The problem is that even an experienced teacher need not to have an overview of all the textbooks available and may not have time enough to explore the textbook thoroughly. We believe the teachers do need some kind of help in form of the reviews from independent evaluators available.

Some differences were proved among various groups as to the need of help: e.g. more primary school teachers as well as younger teachers would welcome help than teachers in other groups. Rather surprisingly the relation between ‘need for help’ and ‘satisfaction with the textbook’ was not proved.
The resources of help

Table 6. The order of help resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant of response</th>
<th>frequency</th>
<th>percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Other teachers’ opinions</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>67.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Experiment (opportunity to try the book in lessons)</td>
<td>502</td>
<td>64.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Reviews from some independent institution</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>33.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Students’ opinions</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>30.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. More detailed information from publishers</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>25.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Other response</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Not know</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The respondents considered ‘other teachers’ opinions’ (68%) and ‘own experiment’ (64%) to be the most important sources of help. While the opportunity to work with five or six textbooks available in the Czech market is minimal, the textbook research can be of a great help for the users. It is obvious from the table (see table 6) that the respondents considered the ‘other teachers’ opinions’ to be more helpful than ‘reviews’ from independent experts. It begs the question why. If it is due to less confidence in ‘theoreticians’ than in ‘practitioners’ or if the teachers have experience of issued reviews which are aimed at subject-field analyses rather than at educational qualities of textbooks. Only about one third of respondents would regard ‘students’ opinions’ as helpful. Although this finding is not very flattering, it is in correspondence with the student status in traditional schooling. On the other hand the statistic analysis proved that teachers with shorter practice had been more interested in students’ opinions than other groups: more than 40% believed it was useful to know it. The beginning teachers with 0-5 years of practice would also welcome the independent reviews more than other respondents. These findings seem to be quite optimistic.

Summary and conclusion

We tried to explore the role of primary and secondary teachers in the textbook selection process in schools of one region in the Czech Republic. The respondents had quite a great opportunity to participate in the process. The prevailing procedure used in textbook selection was teachers’ group decision-making. The role of school headmasters lied primarily in approving of selected textbooks. The most important external factor influencing the selection process was the presence of approval clause of the Ministry of Education while students’ opinions of textbooks had minimal influence. The teachers were convinced they had quite a lot of information on textbooks and they mostly relied on the data from commercial leaflets. Nevertheless, almost two thirds of them would welcome some kind of help in decision-making process.

In our research an absolute majority of our respondents (more than 93 percent) stated that they definitely wanted to select textbooks for their lessons. Our investigation proved that they were more satisfied with the textbooks they had been selected.
able to select. It is not always possible to enable every teacher to select the textbooks. But we believe it is necessary to support the teachers’ right to participate in this process. Teachers should not be forced to use textbooks that they consider inconvenient, of a low quality, not corresponding with their individual teaching styles and, above all, with their students’ needs.

References


Evaluation and Selection of School Textbooks in Kenya: The Role of the Ministerial Textbook Vetting Committee

Daniel Chebutuk Rotich and Joseph Musakali

In pre-independence period and immediately after independence in 1963, textbooks in Kenya were mainly produced by the multinational publishers, and mainly in the United Kingdom where these publishers had their headquarters. This however, changed in 1965 when the government of Kenya established Jomo Kenyatta Foundation (JKF). At that time also, a curriculum centre was established by amalgamation of a number of subject based curriculum centres to form Kenya Institute of Education (KIE).

The formation of these two institutions - KIE and JKF was aimed at producing textbooks locally. There is always a need for a mechanism to review and control the quality of learning materials used in classrooms with regard to relevance, content, educational approach and efficacy, as well as to ensure that the provision of learning materials reflects government policies (Askerud, 1997). The government’s intention was to use KIE to write and JKF to publish textbooks that are socially and culturally acceptable to the Kenyan people and reflect government policies. The government therefore used KIE to identify teachers, educationists and lecturers in teacher training colleges to write manuscripts. The major aim was to produce books that conform to the curriculum, but are also culturally and socially relevant to the needs of the Kenyan pupils.

Although the government established JKF to publish textbooks, it could not produce enough textbooks for all Kenyan schools. Multinational publishers were therefore allowed to publish some textbooks that were developed by KIE and also develop others that conform to the curriculum. The multinationals thus continued to dominate the market even after the establishment of JKF. These multinational publishers that dominated the market from early 1950s to late 1980s included Longman, Oxford University Press (OUP), Heinemann and Macmillan (Rotich, 2000). These publishing firms dominated the industry because they had financial resources to attract well-trained personnel.

When Kenya changed her education system in 1985 from 7-4-2-3 (seven years in primary, four years in secondary, two years in high school and at least three years in university) to 8-4-4 (eight years in primary, four years in secondary school and at least four years in university), the two state-owned publishing houses – Kenya Literature Bureau (KLB) and JKF dominated the production and distribution of textbooks for both primary and secondary schools. KLB had been established through an Act of parliament in 1980 to replace East African Literature Bureau (EALB) that stopped its operations after the collapse of East Africa Community. Following this change in education system, the government, through the Ministry of
Education Science and Technology (MoEST) started to categorise textbooks into core and supplementary textbooks. The core textbooks were those authored by KIE and published by JKF and KLB while the supplementary readers were those published by other publishing houses – the local and multinational publishing firms. Ironically the government used KIE to evaluate these books yet by extension, it was an author. There was only one core textbook per subject in a class, which all schools in Kenya were expected to use.

**Methodology**

Various documents were analysed to come up with this article. These include; the three issues of approved list of textbooks for primary and secondary schools (2003 – 2005), the guidelines on production of textbooks, the actual textbooks and other related documents.

The justification for analysing these materials was three-fold, first, to understand what publishers are required to produce and submit to KIE; secondly to evaluate what publishers produced after the evaluation exercise and finally to compare the number of textbooks that are recommended from the categories of publishers: the local private publishers, the state owned and the multinationals.

**Process of Evaluation and Approval**

Publishers usually submit proposals for suitable textbooks in accordance with the requirements and timetable established in the procedures by the Ministry and KIE. The textbooks can be existing titles without changes, radically revised textbooks, or entirely new textbooks that conform to the curriculum and syllabus.

Publishers pay a non-refundable Kshs 5,000/= (approx 50 Euros) to KIE for a set of evaluation and approval procedures documents. An additional non-refundable submission fee of Kshs 7,500/= (approx 75 Euros) per subject and class is also paid in a bankers cheque to the Director, KIE. Submissions are only accepted from publishers who are legally incorporated and registered in Kenya. All primary textbooks submitted are accompanied by teachers’ guides and they must not include the name of the publisher.

The membership of Ministerial Textbook Vetting Committee (MTVC) is drawn from senior members of MoEST headquarters. This committee, which is the custodian of the requirements for textbook approvals, approves the appointment of subject panel members and one administrator who collate results from subject panels. The administrator’s report is used by the MTVC to announce the list of approved textbooks. The MTVC is not however, bound by the recommendations from the subject panels.
Composition of the Evaluation Panels

There are separate evaluation panels for each curriculum subject. The members who are recommended by KIE and approved by the MTVC, are usually seven comprising:

- a non-scoring moderator who also acts as chair,
- a subject specialist representative of the MOEST, Inspectorate,
- a panel secretary who is a specialist in the subject and has knowledge of the curriculum,
- a subject specialist teacher trainer, and
- three experienced teachers.

Evaluation

In the actual evaluation, each panel member marks each submitted textbook or teacher’s guide individually, without prior consultation with other panel members. The moderator identifies any significant deviations that may occur in marking between individual evaluators. After scrutiny and moderation, the marks of the individual panel members are totalled and averaged. The best total submissions up to maximum number permitted for each subject and class level are recommended to MTVC for the award of approved status. Marks are awarded according to the following criteria:

- Conformity to the curriculum- syllabus coverage;
- Content- relevance of content to subject specific objectives, accuracy and correctness of the subject matter, appropriateness to the level of the learner, organization of the subject matter and promotion of emerging issues;
- Language- accuracy/correctness of language, appropriateness of the language to the level of the learner;
- Exercises and activities- appropriateness to the level of the learner, adequacy, variety, relevance to the syllabus and clarity of instructions and questions;
- Illustrations and design and layout-relevance, variety, adequacy, clarity, colour, proportion, captioning, numbering and labelling.

The teacher’s guide is also assessed separately according to the following criteria:

- Diagnostic assessment exercises;
- Provision of additional content for the teacher;
- Activities to support multi-ability learning;
- Suggestions to use low-cost or no-cost materials;
- Clarity of writing and presentation of text;
- Clear cross referencing to the textbook;
- Clear methodology and support for pupils with special learning difficulties.

When the technical specialist approved by the MTVC is evaluating textbook, they assess the dummies submitted. The dummies must meet the minimum technical specifications provided. There are no marks allocated, unlike other criteria it is
either a pass or fail. Therefore, it shows that even textbooks with good marks on content, language and design but with poor technical specifications may not pass.

MTVC approval requires a summary of the evaluators’ marks for each submission, and may also inspect individual evaluator’s mark sheets. KIE is expected to maintain a complete set of all evaluation documents for at least one year after completion of formal evaluation and approval processes. The textbooks are recommended and approved by the subject evaluation panels and MTVC respectively without subjecting the actual textbooks to the scrutiny of the market. These textbooks therefore have neither preliminary testing nor are they presented to teachers for piloting. In standard practice, the ministry should stipulate the content matter and may define textbook requirements, and then the private publishers publish and market the produced textbooks (Chatry-Komarek, 1994). In the Kenyan system, however, the ministry, through MTVC vets the textbooks before they are published.

**Challenges in Evaluation**

Section 16 of the evaluation document requires all panel members to be scrutinized to ensure that there are no conflict of interest, for example members must not be in full-time or part-time employment with a participating publisher, must not be authors of books being evaluated or advisors, consultants, shareholders, board members or be involved in any other way with a participating publisher.

The document is, however, silent on the authors of the approved textbooks who are from KIE. Such members may leak information pertaining to evaluation and/or influence the panellists’ decisions. Secondly, since in most cases they evaluate dummies, the final product may differ from the dummy. There is no system of quality control. That is why in our findings, a number of approved textbooks fell short of some of the requirements. In one of the texts for instance, the table of contents does not match the body of the text while in others, illustrations are poorly done. Still in others the paper quality is wanting. Textbooks with mistakes still make their way into the market and enjoy the sales once approved.

In the document, under section 14 (Minimum Physical Specifications and Type Requirements), it is stated that publishers should produce affordable but durable books without compromising quality and that the books should be durable enough to last for at least 3–4 years. It is also stated that all books should be strongly bound and finished to withstand constant handling and environmental conditions that may apply. This is not easy to ascertain since books are presented for evaluation as dummies and not as finished products. The technical specifications are very specific on text paper, cover, binding, types and type sizes and page design layout. The problem is that a publisher may not apply them once the book has been approved.

In the 2004 rigorous evaluation exercise a small, upcoming indigenous publisher, spent more than Kshs 35 million in production plus a non-refundable fee of Kshs 3.5 million evaluation fee and yet none of its 35 submitted titles was approved.
Schools have been spending huge amounts of money to repair poorly bound textbooks by publishers out to make quick profits hence school principals have been having problems convincing school boards to allow them to contract unprofessional binders to mend them (Kareithi, 2005). It is also claimed that some publishers have formed an unholy alliance to fleece schools because they seem to compliment each other by alternately covering certain topics very well and others poorly. Schools are therefore forced to buy two sets of books for a subject.

Local book publishers, especially the indigenous, have blamed three international aid agencies funding the free primary education for imposing stringent printing standards that are impossible to meet. Both printers and publishers say the conditions set jointly by UK’s Department for International Development (DFID), the World Bank and the Swedish International Development Agency (SIDA) are impossible to meet. This has made the local publishers to opt for offshore printing. However, the quality of some locally produced textbooks is low. Besides poor quality paper, local printers have failed to ensure standard book covers and binding that will make the book last longer.

Macmillan Kenya Publishers which is a multinational publishing firm prints their textbook titles both locally and abroad because it is cheaper and convenient for them, and translates into cheaper book prices for consumers. There is also a claim that some unscrupulous publishers have previously influenced KIE to approve sub-standard books.

In the 2004 evaluation and production exercise, publishers were informed of the successful textbooks in October. They were supposed to print and produce the books between October and November, for schools to place orders with booksellers in November and had a December deadline for orders to each selected booksellers. With this kind of pressure, mistakes are likely to be made especially in production. The publishers had only four months to print their approved texts in sufficient number for the more than 17,000 primary and 3000 secondary schools, promote and market. Printers cannot cope with this kind of pressure (Muroki, 2004). The current (2005) exercise is operating on the same kind of deadlines. Notification of the successful titles for 2006 was made in mid-October 2005.

Kenya has four major private printers - The English Press, Auto Litho, Kenya Litho and Sun Litho. Apart from the above, the two state-owned publishing houses have their own printing presses. Others have come up but do not have the capacity to handle large volumes of work and may not meet KIE stringent conditions. This is why publishers opt for offshore printing, thus denying the economy the revenue. Furthermore, the printers abroad take time to print the titles because they usually have other works queuing. It also takes about three months to ship books from far distances like Malaysia to Mombasa, not to mention the bureaucracy of clearing consignments at the port of Mombasa.

Offshore printing makes it difficult to maintain competitive standards. In some titles, the paper differs in whiteness and opacity. Some textbooks have very poor opacity
that you can almost read what is on the flip side of a given page. The rustless wires in the saddle stitched textbooks are not evenly spaced in some titles and are not fully closed at centre. The appearing size of typefaces also varies. For instance, Times Roman 16 points looks smaller than Palatino 16. The page layout and design varies in many textbooks because there is no standard way of layout. Quite a number of textbooks do not adhere to the principles of design. Some of them combine symmetrical and asymmetrical layout unsuccessfully. Registration of colours in some textbooks is wanting while others have poor or illustrations.

**Approved School Textbooks of New Curriculum**

The government through the Ministry of Education, Science and Technology introduced new curriculum and/or syllabi when it produced guidelines in 2002. The implementation was to be done in phases as follows:

- 2003: Standard (grade) 1 and 5 (primary) and Form 1 (secondary school)
- 2004: Standard (grade) 2 and 6 (primary) and Form 2 (secondary school)
- 2005: Standard (grade) 3 and 7 (primary) and Form 3 (secondary school)
- 2006: Standard (grade) 4 and 8 (primary) and Form 4 (secondary school)

The process of implementation of the new curriculum started in June 2002 when the Ministry officially approved the new syllabi and developed vetting and evaluation criteria, methodology, rules and regulations. The guidelines on textbook evaluation and approval procedures for developing and distribution of textbooks were distributed to interested publishers. This was done when the Ministry put an advertisement in the press in July 2002 requesting publishers to purchase the documents from KIE. The materials that were to be developed by publishers were to be ready for evaluation by November 2002, three months after purchasing the documents. The rules stipulated that the MTVC was to vet and recommend a maximum of six titles per subject per class for primary and secondary schools.

**Primary School Textbooks**

Since the implementation of the new curriculum in 2003, three phases of new textbooks had been completed by 2005. In the first phase, 26 publishers submitted their textbooks for vetting and evaluation; nine firms managed to get at least one title to the recommended list. In that first phase for the two classes (standard 1 and 5), a total of 63 titles were approved. Due to the short time given to the publishers to prepare the textbook materials, some subjects had less than six titles recommended to schools. Table 1 below shows the publishers and their subject textbooks that were approved.
Table 1. Approved List of Primary School Textbooks 2003

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publishers</th>
<th>Class/Subject</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KLB</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenix Publishers</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JKF</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUP</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAEP</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhillon Publishers</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macmillan (K)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evans Brothers</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longhorn Kenya</td>
<td>1,1, 5,5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Key:** 1 – Standard 1  
5 – Standard 5

In the second phase, a total of 17 publishers submitted their textbooks for consideration and ten publishing houses had their books on the recommended list. In this phase textbooks for standard 2 and 6 were considered in addition to resubmission for standard 1 and 5. Between them there were 80 new titles recommended. These titles included resubmissions for standard 1 and 5. This confirms that when the first phase was introduced, the time allowed for publishers to prepare the textbook materials was too short. Table 2 below shows the publishers and class subject textbooks that were approved in the second phase.

In the third phase, 31 publishing houses submitted their titles for consideration and 12 publishing firms managed to have at least one title on the recommended list. Between the 12 publishers there were 75 new titles on the recommended list and that includes textbooks for standard 3 and 7 and resubmission for other classes from the first and second phases. Table 3 below shows publishers and their class subject textbooks approved.
At the end of phase three, there were 218 titles in the orange book. These titles were shared by three categories of publishing houses – the local private publishing firms, the multinationals and the state-owned publishing houses. The local private publishing firms whose titles were in the orange book were six; this accounted for 50 per cent of the publishing firms whose titles were recommended. However, their share in the textbook market is 40 per cent. It should be noted that the large local private publishing firms control majority of this percentage. The number of state-owned publishers is two accounting for 17 per cent of publishing firms in the textbook market. They however control 25 per cent of the textbook market. The multinationals that participated in the textbook submission exercise were four; this accounted for 33 per cent of the operators whose textbooks were recommended. Their share in the textbook market was 36 percent, almost equal to that of local private publishing firms.

The above scenario demonstrates that large publishing houses with access to financial resources attract well-trained personnel, produce textbooks in a short time and had higher chances.
Table 3. Approved List of Primary School Textbooks 2003 - 2005

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Publishers</th>
<th>Class/Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KLB</td>
<td>1, 2, 5, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenix Publishers</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JKF</td>
<td>1, 2, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUP</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAEP</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhillon</td>
<td>5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publishers</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macmillan</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(K) Publishers</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longman</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(K) Ltd</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evans Brothers</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longhorn</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya Publishers</td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focus Publications</td>
<td>2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malimu Publications</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Secondary School Textbooks

Secondary school textbooks go through the same process of evaluation and a maximum of six titles are recommended from which teachers are expected to select one as the core class textbook. In the first phase seven publishing firms managed to get at least one title for form one to the recommended list. During this phase some subjects like Biology, French and Computer Studies had no course book recommended for that year, therefore, students in form 1 continued to use books meant for the old curriculum.

In the second phase, the ministry advertised for submission of form 2 textbooks and resubmission for missing form 1 textbooks for vetting and evaluation. During this phase, ten publishers managed to have at least one title in the recommended list. When the recommended list of the third phase was released, cumulatively, a total of 12 publishing houses had their books listed. These publishing firms were in the three categories of publishers that operate in Kenya. However, in the secondary school market, the market share was dominated by the big publishing firms regardless of
their categorisation. Out of 12 firms, five of them had more than 10 titles each on the recommended list of 154 titles.

Table 4. Approved Textbooks for Secondary Schools, 2003 - 2005

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Year/Form</th>
<th>2003</th>
<th>2004</th>
<th>2005</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Form 1</td>
<td>Form 1</td>
<td>Form 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,2,3,4</td>
<td>6,3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiswahili</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,6</td>
<td>2,36</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,3,5,6</td>
<td>3,6,7,10</td>
<td>4,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td>6,7</td>
<td>4,8,9</td>
<td>1,3,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td>3,4</td>
<td>6,7</td>
<td>6,7,9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home Science</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,7</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>7,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geography</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6,7</td>
<td>3,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History &amp;</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,2,3,4</td>
<td>1,3,6,7</td>
<td>6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRE</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6,7</td>
<td>1,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Education</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,3,7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biology</td>
<td></td>
<td>2,3,6,7</td>
<td>3,6,7</td>
<td>1,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer Studies</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Conclusions and Recommendation

Textbook preparation for publication is a long process that requires adequate time to allow for identifying authors, writing the manuscripts, processing them for production, evaluation and printing. In the Kenyan case, publishers were given less than three months to come up with manuscripts, prepare dummies and submit them
for evaluation. After evaluation and approval, they had less than two months to print and distribute them. This has led to publishers not being able to prepare and submit textbooks in all subjects in the curriculum.

The technical specifications of the approved textbooks that were given to publishers were very stringent and could not be met by most publishers. Some of the textbooks which were approved were not in conformity with the required standards. This could have been due to the evaluation of dummies as opposed to the actual textbooks to be used. The research also found out that after evaluation and approval of the dummies, there seemed to be no follow-up by the MTVC to ascertain if the textbooks that go to the market meet required standards. At the same time, there seems to be more emphasis on the technical specifications as opposed to the contents, thus locking out books whose dummies did not meet the minimum technical specifications but with good contents. This could have resulted into publishers preferring to print their books outside the country, hence denying local printers printing jobs and revenue to the country as a whole.

It is therefore recommended that the Ministry of Education in Kenya should consider whether it is prudent to continue using dummies as a bench-mark for textbook recommendation. There is also need to come up with criteria of assessing textbooks that are already in the market if they are still within the technical specifications. It is prudent also to redefine the role of MTVC to include monitoring of textbooks being released into the market to see if the standard on the dummies were maintained.

References


The Swedish State Approval of Textbooks 1974-1991
Anna Johnsson Harrie

During the last decades there have been profound changes in the governmental control of school and education in Sweden. One of these important changes, that so far has not attracted the researchers’ attention, is the repeal of the official approval scheme for textbooks and teaching aids in 1991.

Some countries have an official approval scheme for textbooks and some countries do not. Johnsen points out that it is difficult to see any pattern in, or special reason for, the differences. But there was a tendency, he says, that many countries with an approval scheme reduced or repealed their examination in the 1990s (Johnsen, 1993).

From 1938 and onwards the Swedish Government had an official approval scheme for examining books before they could be used as textbooks in Swedish schools. An approval committee, with the help of especially appointed examiners, performed the actual examinations. From 1938 until June 1974 the examination was compulsory for all textbooks. There were several aspects that should be examined, for instance the price of the book and that the content corresponded to the national curriculum. From July 1974, and until the official approval scheme was repealed in 1991, the examination was compulsory only for textbooks and teaching aids in the social sciences. Social sciences included civics, history, geography and religion.

The political decision to change the approval system in 1974 was taken by the Swedish Parliament. The new law stated that the aim of the approval scheme was to see that the textbook was impartial and in accordance with the goals and the guiding principles of the national curriculum (Svensk författningssamling, 1974, 438).

In 1982 the approval scheme was, once again, discussed in Parliament and a few changes were decided. One of the two major changes concerned the organisation of the approval committee. The committee was transferred from the Swedish National Board of Education, (Skolöverstyrelsen), to the state-owned Institute for Information about Textbooks (Statens institut för Läromedelsinformation). The second major change was that the approval committee no longer was to decide whether a textbook was to be accepted or not. Instead, the approval committee would make a statement about each book. The aim of these statements was to help schools when deciding which textbook they would use. The work of the approval committee can from here on be seen as a sort of consumer guidance. The instructions for what to examine remained unchanged. The purpose was still to see that the textbook was impartial and in accordance with the curriculum (Svensk författningssamling, 1983, 273). This was kept unchanged until the examination was repealed in 1991. After that there is no official approval at all of textbooks in Sweden.
A presentation of the study

The aim of my coming dissertation-thesis is to study both the political discussion about, and the actual implementation of, the approval scheme in Sweden 1938-1991. In this article I will present one part of this work: a study of the examinations of textbooks in civics for grammar school during 1974-1991. All examinations performed by the approval committee from three different time periods have been studied.

There are two things in focus in this article. The first concerns the instructions that the examiners received from the approval committee. What was it that the approval committee wanted the examiners to concentrate on? The second concerns the written statements from the examiners. What did the examiners really write about in their statements? The aim is to see what the approval committee pointed out as the most important task for the examiners and how the examiners performed their task.

This is a study of the implementation of the political decision about textbook approval. Lindensjö and Lundgren describe implementation not as one process, but as many different processes, and give two examples: guideline writing and field-implementation. Guideline writing is when the civil servants interpret a political decision into rules. Field-implementation is the execution of these rules in a certain case (Lindensjö and Lundgren, 2000). These two concepts can be useful when we want to take a closer look at the Swedish approval scheme for textbooks. The guideline writing in this case is the approval committee’s interpretation of the assignment in the written instructions to the examiners. The examiners’ statements about certain books are to be seen as a part of the field-implementation process.

Three time periods have been chosen for this study, each of them lasts eighteen months. The first period, from July 1974 to December 1975, is the first months of the examination. The second period, from July 1983 to December 1984, is when the changes decided in 1982 officially came into force. The third period, from January 1990 to June 1991, is the last months of the examination before it was repealed.

Two sorts of material are used in this study. The first material is the different memoranda with instructions that the approval committee gave to the examiners. There were no, formally decided, instructions when the examination started in 1974. There were a few drafts and after a year, the approval committee formally decided on a memorandum with instructions. This memorandum was revised in 1977, 1984 and 1988. The second kind of material is the examiners’ written statements concerning certain textbooks. The length of these statements varies from four lines to nearly 14 pages.

During the first period in this study, 1974-1975, the approval committee had to make decisions about 18 civic textbooks for grammar school. In these 18 cases the appointed examiners wrote 45 statements. Many of the cases consisted of several textbooks and supplementary material in the same series. It was common that...
different examiners examined different books. The approval committee could also decide to let more than one examiner make a statement about one book.

During the two other time-periods, there were fewer cases. 1982-83 there were six cases and a total sum of eleven statements. In all but one case there were two examiners who examined each book. 1990-91 there were five cases and two examiners in each case. Since one statement is missing in the files, there are nine statements from this period.

Before we look closer at the statements we shall look at the instructions from the approval committee.

The instructions from the approval committee

A month before the approval committee started its new work in July 1974, there was a memorandum set up at the Swedish National Board of Education, which included a draft of guidelines for the examination of textbooks. Another draft was made a few months later by one of the examiners. The approval committee did not officially decide upon any of these drafts. But at least the later one was sent to all the examiners for their information. In these early drafts the question of accordance with the national curriculum is of vital importance. Another important aspect is that the textbooks should be activating and stimulating for the pupils. Finally it is also stressed that it is important that the facts are correct and in accordance with the latest results from the social scientists (Skolöverstyrelsen, Läromedelsnämnden, F3:1).

The approval committee decided to appoint a working team to write instructions for the work of the examiners. The team started to work in the autumn of 1974 and they presented their first draft to the approval committee in December 1974. Their work continued and in June 1975, they presented their final proposal. The approval committee officially decided to use this memorandum with instructions for the examiners. So one year after the examination had started, the official instructions for the examiners were stated. The memorandum was later slightly altered in 1977, 1984 and 1988. The main part of the memorandum, though, was kept unchanged until the examination was repealed in 1991.

The memorandum is based on six questions that the examiners were expected to use when they examined the textbooks. The questions in the 1975 memorandum are:

1. Are different events, aspects and opinions given reasonable room?
2. Is there any incorrect information?
3. Is the textbook misleading or biased?
4. Has the author presented potentially controversial aspects?
5. Is the presentation of different topics neutral?
6. Is the presentation in accordance with the goals and the guiding principles in the curriculum? (Skolöverstyrelsen, Läromedelsnämnden, F3:1)

The questions one to five are, in the memorandum, followed by comments, explanations and examples, to try to make the meaning of the questions clearer for
the examiners. The last question though, is only followed by a few quotations from the curriculum and the government bill (Skolöverstyrelsen, Läromedelsnämnden, F3:1).

In the explanatory text following the second question, about incorrect information, it is stressed that this question only is relevant in cases when incorrect information causes a bias. The examiners could comment on incorrect information in other cases as well, if they wished, but it was irrelevant for the approval (Skolöverstyrelsen, Läromedelsnämnden, F3:1).

In the version from 1977 the only question that has been changed is number five. The new question is:

5. Does the presentation in the textbook favour or treat unfairly one part, (opinion, values, etc.,) to the benefit of another by, for instance, irrelevant and subjective opinions, difficult language or a bias in the pictures or tapes? (Skolöverstyrelsen, Läromedelsnämnden, F3:1)

In 1984, the questions were left unchanged. The main change in this version is that the statements now should not result in a decision of whether the textbook was approved or not approved. Now it should instead include a short summary of the pros and cons of the textbook (Statens institut för läromedelsinformation, A4C).

In 1988 two changes were made. One is a change to question number two, where the new wording is: Is the information as correct as possible? The second change is a change of order. The former sixth question, about the curriculum, has been moved. In this version the question about accordance with the curriculum is placed first. There is also new text that stresses that the examination has two main purposes: to guarantee objectivity and correspondence with the curriculum. The other five questions in the memorandum have kept their relative positions (Statens institut för läromedel, A3C).

From this we can see that the memorandum set up by the working team in 1974-75, from the very beginning, is different from the drafts made previously. The first drafts have a focus on the national curriculum and it is important that the facts in the books are correct.

From the very first draft made by the working team, their memorandum has been clearly dominated by questions about bias and neutrality in the textbooks. It was irrelevant if the facts were incorrect, as long as it didn’t cause a bias. This has not been changed in the following alterations. In the last version, from 1988, the question of accordance to the curriculum got a stronger position. Following this study of the guidelines for the examination we will now look at the examiners’ statements.
Four different notions of an officially approved textbook

The statements from all three periods have been read thoroughly and they have been split up into different parts, depending on what kind of criticism they are dealing with. These different text parts have then been organised into different categories. This way four analytical categories have been created from the statements. Each of the categories concerns a special aspect of the textbook and its liability as a useful aid in the school context. Each category shall be seen as an ideal-typical notion of what an officially approved textbook should be like. The categories are ideal-typical in the meaning that they do not exist in their pure form, but are stylised to show the most essential features.

One important result from this study is thus that the statements can be described after four different ideal-typical notions of an officially approved textbook. These four notions are balance, correctness, design and curriculum. The four ideal-typical notions are described one by one before we will look closer at how they are represented in the statements.

In the notion of balance the most central thing is that there is no hidden agenda in the textbook. The text and the pictures have to be neutral. The author is not allowed to propagate a certain opinion in the book. Avoiding controversial subjects is not the way to solve this problem. On the contrary, it is important that controversial subjects are described and that different aspects are balanced against each other. It is also vital that the textbook is neither partial, nor includes moralising or emotive statements.

The notion of correctness focuses on the facts in the book. It is crucial that the facts are correct. There must be no intentional or unintentional factual errors. It is also important that the facts are as up-to-date as possible, considering the printing time. The facts also need to cover the most essential parts of the subject.

The main focus in the notion of design is that the textbook has to have a good educational design. The language is important. It should neither be too difficult nor too childish. Another essential part is how the content of the book is arranged. The textbook should interest the pupils in the subject. That is not only a question of text, but also the pictures and maps are important here. The book and the tasks given to the pupils should be engaging and activating. The textbook must be adapted to the pupils’ age, previous knowledge and experiences.

According to the notion of curriculum the most important criterion for an approved textbook is accordance with the instructions in the national curriculum. The book must cover the topics that are to be treated in this school subject. In the national curriculum there are also a few principal ideals: democracy, gender equality, international solidarity and critical thinking. It is crucial that each textbook is permeated by these ideals.

In the following section we will see how these ideal-typical notions are represented in the examiners’ statements.
The examiners’ statements

In an examiner’s statement about a certain textbook several of the four notions described above may be represented. To be able to see how frequent each of the four categories is, every statement has been categorized according to its dominating notion. The first criterion, when to decide which category that is dominating a certain statement, is room. The notion that has been given the greatest amount of room in a statement is defined as the dominating one. If no single notion has been given a greater amount of room than the others, the next criterion has been if the examiner anywhere in the statement says that a certain aspect is the most important. If neither of these two criteria can be fulfilled in a statement, that statement is seen as impossible to categorize. Each one of the 65 statements has been categorized this way and the results for the different periods can be seen in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Balance</th>
<th>Correctness</th>
<th>Design</th>
<th>Curriculum</th>
<th>Impossible to categorize</th>
<th>Total number of statements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1974-75</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1983-84</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1990-91</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total number of statements</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the period from the start of the examination in July 1974 until December 1975, the approval committee had 18 cases concerning civic books for the grammar school and the examiners wrote 45 statements (Skolöverstyrelsen: Läromedelsnämnden, F1:1-5). Nearly half of these statements are dominated by the notion of balance, which makes this category the most common, during this period. The second most common category is correctness. The other two, design and curriculum, only dominate in a few cases.

In the second period, from July 1983 to December 1984, there were six cases and eleven written statements (Statens institut för läromedelsinformation, E3D:2-3). Correctness dominates in more than half of these statements. Balance dominates in a few statements and curriculum in one of them. Design is not the dominating notion in any of the statements from this period. The most common dominating category has thus changed, from balance to correctness.

In the third and final period, from January 1990 to June 1991, there were five cases and nine statements (Statens institut för läromedel, E1B). Two thirds of these statements are dominated by correctness. Design dominates in one and curriculum in two statements. Balance does not dominate in any of these statements.

When comparing the results from the three periods we see that the notion of balance is the most common during the first period, but is less common in the second and not represented at all in the last period. The category correctness is commonly used through all the three periods, but relatively more used during the two latest. Design
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

is not common as the dominating notion during any of the three periods, although there are a few statements in the first and the last period. The category curriculum, finally, is not common as the dominating category during any of the three periods. Though it is possible to see that it is receiving a slightly greater share in the latest period. For three of the categories, i.e., balance, correctness, and curriculum, we can see some interesting changes when we compare the results from the different periods. These changes can be seen clearly in the following diagram.

The frequency of balance changes clearly from dominating nearly half of the statements in the first period, to not dominating any statement in the last period. Correctness is the second most common in the first period and the far most common in the second and the third period. We can also see that curriculum becomes more common during the second and especially the third period.

Conclusions

The purpose of the examination, according to the formulation in the law, was to secure that the textbooks were impartial and in accordance with the goals and guiding principles in the curriculum. That was the political decision. In this article we have looked at how this decision was implemented when it came to the examination of civic textbooks for grammar school.

When we first look at the process of guideline writing we see that this process took one year. We can see that the categories, which were defined from the statements, also can be applied on the instructions. The two earliest drafts are dominated by the notion of curriculum. Correctness and design are also represented. But the memorandum written by the working team, and officially decided upon by the approval committee, is dominated by balance. Although this memorandum was altered in 1977, 1984, and 1988, all the versions are still dominated by balance.

When we look at the process of field-implementation, we see that during the early period balance dominates in nearly half of the statements. It is less common during the second period and in the last period no statement at all is dominated by balance. So the written guidelines stayed unchanged and kept their focus on balance during
the whole time of examination. At the same time the practice of the examiners changed.

Correctness is quite a strong notion in the first two drafts of instructions. But in the memorandum written by the working team, it says clearly that this was mostly irrelevant. In the examiners’ statements, though, the picture is different. Correctness was here the most common or the second most common during all the three periods. Correctness is not a strong notion, neither in the political decision nor in the guidelines, but in the field-implementation of this decision correctness is often a dominating notion.

Curriculum plays an important role in the political decision about the examination. It also dominates the two earliest drafts for instructions. It is represented in the memorandum with instructions. But the question of accordance with the curriculum is at the end of the instructions and is not presented in the same way as the other five questions. In the latest version of the memorandum, this question had been moved to the beginning. So the notion of curriculum has a stronger position in the last version of the memorandum. When it comes to field-implementation, curriculum is never common as the dominating category. Here we can see that both the written guidelines and the field-implementation differ from the political decision.

Design is never common, but there are a few statements that are dominated by this category in the first and last periods.

There has been no similar Swedish study carried out, which makes it difficult to compare the results. However, a study conducted in Norway (Bjørndalen, 1982), concerned with statements from the examiners in Norwegian, natural sciences, mathematics and social sciences shows that the statements were more concentrated on correcting the facts of the textbooks than discussing pedagogic and didactic aspects of them. So the category that we here call correctness seems to have been widely presented in the Norwegian material as well. In the same way design seems to have been less common in the Norwegian statements. The two studies have these two results in common.

The official assignment for the Swedish approval committee was mainly the same from 1974 to 1991, and so were also the written guidelines. But there was an important difference between the political decision and the written guidelines when it came to the notion of curriculum. Accordance with the curriculum is an important part of the law, but not of the guidelines. The actual field-implementation diverges from the instructions in the way that correctness is very common in the statements and that balance diminishes in the statements, from being the most common in the first period to disappearing totally in the last period. The study shows that the actual implementation diverged from both the political decision and the instructions. The actual implementation also did change over time.
References

Published material


Svensk Författningssamling (The Swedish Statute Book) 1974:438
Svensk Författningssamling (The Swedish Statute Book) 1983:273

Unpublished material from the Swedish National Archives (Arninge, Stockholm):
Skolöverstyrelsen Läromedelshemnden (Swedish National Board of Education, The Committee for Textbooks). Volumes F1:1-5, F3:1
Statens institut för läromedelsinformation (Institute for Information about Textbooks). volumes A4C, E3D:2-3
Statens institut för läromedel. (Institute for Textbooks). volumes A3C, E1B
Greek primary teachers’ preferences for and characteristics of science textbooks

Ioannis Exarhos

Purpose

The purpose of my current work is to identify Greek primary teachers’ preferences for science textbook structure, as well as to describe the characteristics of science textbooks, function of illustrations in science textbooks and science text. Any attempt to improve primary school science textbooks or influence change in how they are selected and used in the classroom must necessarily begin with an assessment and analysis of teachers’ actual preferences and perceptions of science textbook.

Instrument

A Shymansky, Yore and Good (1991) questionnaire was modified and enriched with statements related to illustrations and science textbook characteristics in order to suit my research. Two pilot studies for the new questionnaire were carried out to identify inconsistencies, word ambiguities and to enhance the reliability and validity.

Questionnaire’s validity was established by a factor analysis. The basic assumption of this factor analysis is that the valid fundamental components underlying the questionnaire’s design will be revealed as principle components with specific conceptual unity similar to which was intended. The factor analysis data were interpreted as 10 factors clustered into the three conceptually unified dimensions central to the study: science textbook structure, science text, and illustrations.

The reliability of the perceived science textbook structure, science text and illustrations in science textbooks were determined by Cronbach’s alpha method (Anastasi, 1982). The 13-item science textbook structure subscale analysis yielded a reliability index of 0.619. The 9-item science text subscale analysis yielded a reliability index of 0.719. The 9-item function of illustrations in science textbook subscale analysis yielded a reliability index of 0.643.

The new questionnaire consisted of 32 items in a Likert-type scale and yielded internal consistency of 0.82 (Cronbach’s α=0.82).

Method-Sample

A random sample of 78 Greek primary public schools in Attica (province of Athens) was drawn from the National Registry of Greek primary public schools at the Pedagogical Institute and it consisted of 720 teachers. The study was carried out from September 2002 to January 2003. Every Greek primary public school which
participated in the study received a folder with questionnaires and a letter explaining the purpose of the study and instructions on how to fill in the questionnaires. The head teacher of each school was instructed to distribute the questionnaires to the school personnel and after three weeks the teachers put their completed questionnaires in the folder. The investigator assured the respondents’ anonymity. By the end of January 2003, 572 completed questionnaires were returned from the 78 Greek primary public schools which participated in the study.

Analysis of data
The 572 completed questionnaires were codified and analyzed by the researcher with the use of S.P.S.S 12.0 in a computer.

The analysis provided Pearson r, ANOVA, frequency distributions, percentages, mean and standard deviations.

Science textbook structure
Response data in Table 1 focus on Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of science textbook structure.

Table 1. Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of science textbook structure
(Mean, Standard Deviation, and Percentages of 572 respondents)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>Standard Deviation</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. “Hands-on” activities should be central to science textbook.</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>0.718</td>
<td>62.4</td>
<td>31.7</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Science programmes should challenge students to explain natural phenomena.</td>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>0.486</td>
<td>79.4</td>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Topics that allow for “hands-on” inquiry by students should be selected over topics that do not.</td>
<td>1.41</td>
<td>0.639</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>31.3</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Teachers in teaching science should use a learning cycle that follows the “explore-concept introduction-concept application”.</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>0.739</td>
<td>51.8</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Science in upper elementary grades should be designed to prepare students for the concepts that will be taught in the secondary school.</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>1.066</td>
<td>44.2</td>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Students’ interpretation of data from science experiments should be emphasized more strongly in science text.</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>0.908</td>
<td>50.3</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Teachers should be given the freedom to structure their own sequence of topics and instructional activities.</td>
<td>1.90</td>
<td>0.988</td>
<td>40.2</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. The total number of science topics should be reduced to allow for more thorough coverage of those remaining.</td>
<td>1.78</td>
<td>1.073</td>
<td>55.3</td>
<td>28.8</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

| 9. The science text should contain all the information needed by a reader to understand an idea. | 1.41 | 0.806 | 72.1 | 21.2 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 1.8 |
| 10. Students should be given the freedom to structure their own sequence of topics and learning activities. | 2.91 | 1.252 | 10.8 | 36.9 | 17 | 21.3 | 14 |
| 18. A table of contents should be included in science textbooks. | 1.27 | 0.621 | 82.3 | 8.9 | 8.4 | 0.4 | 0 |
| 19. A subject index should be included in science textbooks. | 1.19 | 0.567 | 87.5 | 8.1 | 3.2 | 0.7 | 0.5 |
| 23. Each concept’s practical application should be included in science textbooks. | 1.16 | 0.438 | 86.6 | 11.8 | 0.9 | 0.7 | 0 |

*SA=Strongly Agree, A=Agree, U=Undecided, D=Disagree, SD=Strongly Disagree

Based on the responses, it appears that teachers believe “hands-on” activities should be central to science textbooks (items 1, 2, 3, 4) and students’ interpretation of data from science experiments should be emphasized more strongly in science texts (item 6). Teachers are in favor of the conceptual development within the school organization (item 5), flexibility in sequencing topics (item 7) and depth versus breadth coverage of content (item 8). However, teachers are not willing to turn science topics and activities over to their students (item 10) nor do they realize that a textbook cannot contain all the information needed to understand an idea (item 9). Greek primary teachers’ responses on item 9 contradict the responses on the same item from Shymansky, Yore and Good (1991) survey in the U.S.A.. One explanation might be that Greek primary teachers had “one centrally approved science textbook” policy for many years and could not comprehend the function of different multiple resources. Greek primary teachers felt that a table of contents, an index and practical applications of science concepts in everyday life should be included in a science textbook (items 18, 19, 23).

**Science text**

The response data in Table 2 focus on Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of science text included in a science textbook.

The response data in Table 2 indicate that the author of science text should introduce technical vocabulary and new concepts gradually (item 16), as well as introductory questions (item 20) and summaries (item 22). Greek primary teachers prefer the author of a science text to use different patterns for signaling the important information such as box asides (item 14). Science text structure that includes at least one of the relationships cause-effect, problem-solution, and compare-contrast in a paragraph as well as in a chapter is preferable to Greek primary teachers (item 11). Titles and headings of science text should include the basic information of the text (item 12) and science text information presented with discourse consistency is considered important (item 13). The contradictory findings from items 11 and 13 make it obvious that Greek primary teachers do recognize the unique structure of science text but they are influenced by narrative text as well. This discrepancy could be explained by the fact narrative text is heavily used in other disciplines. Roberts
Workshop 3: Quality, Evaluation and Selection

(1983) pointed out that such discrepancies exist in the philosophical rationales of many science teachers. Greek primary teachers emphasized a cycle of “concept introduction-concept clarification-examples” in a science text (item 15). These data further explain that teachers’ opinions are significantly influenced by narrative style of text and they lack in-depth consideration of expository science text and its unique language. Greek primary teachers prefer the author to signal explicitly the structure of the text, presenting his/her opinion at the end of the text (item 17).

Table 2. Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of science text in a science textbook (Mean, Standard Deviation, and Percentages of 572 respondents).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions (Depended Variables)</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>Standard Deviation</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11. Science text structure should include at least one of the relationships cause-effect, problem-solution, and compare-contrast in a paragraph as well as in a chapter.</td>
<td>1.50</td>
<td>0.713</td>
<td>60.1</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Titles and headings of science text should include the basic information of the text.</td>
<td>1.52</td>
<td>0.817</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>24.2</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Science text information should be presented with discourse consistency.</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.430</td>
<td>84.2</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. The author of a science text should use different patterns of signaling the important information such as box asides, and introductory questions.</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>0.707</td>
<td>67.1</td>
<td>25.6</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. The author of a science text should use the cycle “concept introduction-concept clarification-examples” in his/her writing.</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>0.988</td>
<td>57.5</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. The author of a science text should introduce the use of technical vocabulary and new concepts gradually.</td>
<td>1.84</td>
<td>0.744</td>
<td>63.3</td>
<td>28.7</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. The author of a science text should signal explicitly the structure of the text, presenting his/her perception at the end of the text.</td>
<td>2.34</td>
<td>1.195</td>
<td>28.5</td>
<td>33.3</td>
<td>22.2</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Introductory questions should be included in science textbooks.</td>
<td>1.72</td>
<td>0.858</td>
<td>49.2</td>
<td>33.6</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Summaries should be included in science textbooks.</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>0.952</td>
<td>59.1</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* SA=Strongly Agree, A=Agree, U=Undecided, D=Disagree, SD= Strongly Disagree.

Perceptions about science illustrations in science textbooks

The response data in Table 3 indicate that Greek Primary teachers advocate a satisfactory number of effective and distinct illustrations that help their students comprehend the text (item 24, 25).
Table 3. Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of the illustrations included in a science textbook (Mean, Standard Deviation, and Percentages of 572 respondents).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions (Depended Variables)</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>Standard Deviation</th>
<th>SA</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21. Diagrams (graphs, charts) should be included in science textbooks.</td>
<td>1.84</td>
<td>0.974</td>
<td>44.9</td>
<td>35.7</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. A science textbook should include a satisfactory number of illustrations to help students comprehend the text.</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>0.340</td>
<td>90.9</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Distinct and effective graphic devices should be included in science textbooks.</td>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>0.351</td>
<td>91.2</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. In a science textbook photographs and line drawings should be used to help students to clarify text.</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>0.386</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Illustration in a science textbook should increase students’ interest to read the text as well as to motivate them in discussing further in classroom.</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>0.381</td>
<td>88.5</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. In a science textbook, a picture should be positioned as close as possible to the sentence referring to it (e.g. look at picture 3) and should be accompanied by caption.</td>
<td>1.51</td>
<td>0.767</td>
<td>62.2</td>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. In a science textbook an illustration should provide students with additional information to the written text.</td>
<td>1.96</td>
<td>1.053</td>
<td>41.2</td>
<td>33.9</td>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Analysis of the kind of criterion performance that is desired of the student (e.g. to understand a concept, to remember unfamiliar content, to transfer text concepts) should define the kind of illustrations (e.g. representational illustration, line drawings, charts) which should be used by the author of a science textbook.</td>
<td>1.43</td>
<td>0.667</td>
<td>64.7</td>
<td>28.8</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Pictorial models or illustrations which represent facets of the science text which cannot be presented comprehensibly in a written form should accompany the complicated expository science text.</td>
<td>1.42</td>
<td>0.736</td>
<td>69.4</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*SA=Strongly Agree, A=Agree, U=Undecided, D=Disagree, SD=Strongly Disagree.

The function of illustration in clarifying science text (item 26), increasing students’ interest and motivation (item 27) and providing additional information to the written text (item 29) is supported by Greek primary teachers. Thus, they indicate that pictorial models or illustrations that represent facets of the science text which cannot be presented comprehensively in a written form should accompany the
complicated expository text (item 31). The majority of teachers prefer pictures that are positioned as close as possible to the sentence referring to it and be accompanied by a caption (item 28). In addition, the author of a science textbook should choose illustrations according to the kind of criterion performance that is desired of the students (item 30). Furthermore, they consider diagrams (graphs, charts) as a basic component of a science textbook (item 21).

In a statement (item 32) examining teachers’ training in selecting the most appropriate science textbook for their students, seven out of ten Greek primary teachers expressed confidence in their ability and three out of ten lack of confidence in science textbook selection (Mean=2.22, Standard Deviation=1.444 of 572 respondents).

In order to clarify and enrich teachers’ perceptions of science textbook characteristics such as structure, science text and illustrations, a random sample of 55 Greek primary teachers who had previously answered the questionnaire were interviewed. An in-depth semi-structured interview was chosen (Wengraf 2001). The term “semi-structure” suggests a certain degree of standardization of interview questions, and a certain degree of openness of response by the interviewer (Wengraf 2001). Questions related to science text, language, science textbook structure and function as well as types of illustrations were prepared. In addition, a question to rate science textbook characteristics was added in the interview. Each interview was tape-recorded and extended notes were written by the investigator. Each interview was subsequently transcribed in a word processor. The 55 in-depth semi-structured interviews were analyzed with a systematic grid which used text, illustration and science textbook structure as key words.

The data from the questionnaires and the in-depth semi-structured interviews indicate that Greek primary teachers held misconceptions related to science text. These were confirmed by the questionnaires and the in-depth semi-structured interviews and indicate that respondents:

- Prefer science text to be as simple and comprehensible as possibly
- Have difficulties in recognizing science text as a unique genre
- Prefer narrative text to expository text.
- Are aware of technical language
- Are led to childism.

The ambiguity about science text that was expressed could be explained by the fact that Greek primary teachers teach a lot of narrative text in other disciplines and they are familiar with its form. Furthermore, Greek primary teachers could not easily distinguish science text as a unique genre (Lemke, 1990). In addition, some teachers adopt the idea that science is too hard for children and the language of science (and thus the science) has to be watered down and made personal without technical terms. Martin (1985) described and labeled this idea as “childism”. Greek primary teachers are not aware of the historic evolution of the scientific genre, nor of the fact that is not the function of narrative to classify, decompose measure and explain. For this
purpose, the genres science has itself evolved, are naturally more appropriate. The functionality of science text and the technicality it contains cannot be avoided. Teachers have to deal with it; they need to understand the structure of the genre and the grammar of technicality.

On the other hand, Greek primary teachers’ perceptions of science textbook structure were contradictory. Teachers’ responses in a question to rate the importance of science textbook characteristics indicate that teachers did not rate science textbook structure as high as they rated the other science textbook characteristics (Figure 1). Furthermore, the questionnaires’ analysis validated that their perceptions of science textbook structure were ambiguous. They perceive it as full of “hands-on” activities packed between the two covers of the textbook, and including an appendix, a table of contents and practical applications of science concepts. On the contrary, they are aware of the conceptual development within the school organization, prefer flexibility in sequencing topics and activities to meet their students’ needs and prefer science experiments to be emphasized more strongly in science textbook structure.

During the semi-structured interviews Greek primary teachers were asked to rate science textbook characteristics in a scale indicating their importance. Data in Table 4 indicate that male teachers rate science experiments as the most important characteristic of a science textbook. On the contrary, female teachers rate illustrations as the most important characteristic of a science textbook. A possible explanation, which is supported by the semi-structured interviews, is that female
teachers prefer illustrations as a starting point of discussion and a text-driven model to teach science. On the other hand, male teachers prefer experiments and an inductive teaching model. In other words, male teachers prefer a textbook with experiments, inductive questions sequencing, and many illustrations. Such textbooks might be a useful adjunct to current teaching practices but do not provide satisfactory models for writing in science. Students should be explicitly taught how to write and use technical language in science. If this situation does not change, teachers would rather focus on content without taking language into account, probably with an increasing emphasis on science activities rather than science texts. The emphasis on doing science as opposed to learning science, the model of the child as a mini-scientist participating in activities analogous to those undertaken by scientists centuries ago as they began to formulate their picture of the world should change. The effect of the advice given is to foreground doing (observing and experimenting) and place language, especially written language in the background. This means that children are not taught to access the genres science has evolved to store information, which leads to a tremendous inefficiency in teaching writing across the curriculum. Teachers’ perceptions are constantly driven by teaching methods alongside scientific knowledge based on pedagogical content knowledge and restricted by curriculum documents and every day practice.

Summary

Greek primary teachers hold contradictory and ambiguous opinions related to science textbook structure. They perceive it as a science content full of “hands-on” activities that are packed between the two covers of a textbook and include an appendix, a table of contents and applications of science concepts. On the other hand, they are aware of the conceptual development within the school organization, prefer flexibility in sequencing science topics and activities (a non-linear textbook) and prefer science experiments to be emphasized more strongly in a science textbook. Greek primary teachers are clearly opposed to a “limited-text” plus illustration science textbook. They have difficulties in recognizing science text as a unique genre, indicating their preference for narrative text. They are concerned about science language; especially the introduction of new science concepts and some teachers are concerned with “childism” (Martin, 1985b). Greek primary teachers are concerned about comprehensibility in science text.

The use of graphic devices is well accepted by Greek primary teachers as motivating, informing, clarifying and reinforcing science text. Both genders prefer a variety or mixed type (realistic and abstract-symbolic) of illustrations as a result of their beliefs rather than studying current graphic devices research. Current research indicates that effective learning with illustrations can be fostered through instructional design by the author of the instructional material and through adequate processing strategies by the learner. Effective learning with graphic devices is not dependent on the professional appearance of graphic devices but rather on the
relation between these displays, the task demands and the learner’s cognitive abilities. Thus, graphic devices should be designed according to the Gestalt laws, with a view to communicating, teaching and learning (Schnotz, 2002).

In addition, male teachers rate science experiments as the most important characteristic of a science textbook. Male teachers prefer experiments and an inductive teaching model. Their opinions are shaped by their practical experiences as well as scientific knowledge. On the other hand, female teachers prefer a great number of different types of illustrations as a starting point for discussion and a text-driven model to teach science.

The data from the survey and semi-structured interviews have implications for the design, selection and evaluation of science textbooks and for the science curriculum.

**Discussion**

The above gender discrepancy in Greek primary teachers’ preferences for science textbook characteristics has tremendous implications for the design of science textbooks. In addition, if someone considers that the female /male percentage ratio that serves in Greek primary schools is 65/35 respectively and steadily decreases annually for male teachers, it will be wise to think about the future direction the design of the science textbook should follow. I do not advocate here a female-centered approach to science textbook design, but female teachers’ preferences should be challenged during in-service training and within science courses at the Faculties of Education in Greek universities during the training of primary teachers. Textbook structure is of vital importance to teachers and students. Kress and Van Leeuwen (2001) advocate that science textbooks are multimodal and issues such as what mode to use for which segments of the curricular content, how to arrange the content, how to arrange the ensemble of modes in the structure affect teacher and student knowledge and thus the shaping of knowledge. The shaping of knowledge has far-reaching cultural, social and political consequences. Designers’ decisions should be overtly articulated to the intended audiences. If Greek primary teachers have inadequacy perceiving science textbook structure, that may lead to ineffective adaptation of their teaching style. Furthermore, ineffective science textbook adaptation will affect students’ knowledge and learning. In every stage of textbook design, designers have to make choices. These choices are related to what mode will be chosen to deliver the message. The message is communicated through science text, illustrations and page layout. Greek primary teachers’ preferences opposing a “limited text” science textbook may arise from their visual illiteracy. They perceive science text as supplementary to illustrations rather than as a unique genre. Their perceptions are based on their knowledge from old linear science textbooks and they lack knowledge of current research into visual literacy. They are not aware of each mode’s constraints to meaning making nor can they see science text from non-linguistic perspectives (semiotics). The above have implications for science textbook selection. If the centralized educational system in Greece moves towards decentralized science textbook selection, Greek primary teachers should be well
prepared to proceed with the selection process. Urgent in-service training for teachers is needed in order to accomplish this task.

**Recommendations**

1. To strongly emphasize teaching methods in science courses at the Faculties of Education in Greek Universities for the training of primary teachers.
2. Teaching science genre as a unique genre emphasizes its appearance in science evolution and its components.
3. Urgent needed “in-service” training for Greek primary teachers on the criteria used to select a science textbook.
4. “In-service” training on teaching writing in science for Greek primary teachers.
5. Revised science curriculum and balance of doing science as opposed to learning science with a reduction in science topics.
6. Strong opposition to a “limited-text” plus a lot of illustrations in a science textbook.

**References**


Chaechun Gim

An overview of the Korean textbook issuing system

In Korea, three different categories of textbooks are allowed to be used in schools: Government-copyrighted textbooks, government-authorized textbooks, government-approved textbooks. Statute 29 of Primary and Secondary Education Law says "Schools shall use the textbooks whose authorship belongs to the national government or the textbooks which are officially authorized or approved by the Minister of Education and Human Resources Development (MOEHRD)". Government-copyrighted textbooks are the textbooks whose authorship belongs to the national government, government-authorized textbooks are the textbooks which private publishers have developed and got the authorization from the national government, and government-approved textbooks are the textbooks which have got the approval whose standard is lower than that of the authorization review. The scale of interference by the national government in the issuance of textbooks is largest in government-copyrighted textbooks, while it is smallest in government-approved textbooks. And government-authorized textbooks stand between them.

Most of Korean schools use government-copyrighted and government-authorized textbooks, because approved textbooks are allowed to be used only in exceptional cases. Article No. 3 code 1 in the Ordinances for the Use of Textbooks says "The principal of a school shall use the government-copyrighted textbooks when they are already published, and shall choose and use government-authorized textbooks when a specific subject does not have government-copyrighted textbooks for it". Approved textbooks are used only after a specific approval by the MOEHRD or by the Superintendent of Education when government-copyrighted or authorized textbooks are not published for a specific subject. As most subjects have their government-copyrighted or authorized textbooks, however, most of the Korean schools use government-copyrighted or government-authorized textbooks.

In Korean elementary schools, government-copyrighted textbooks are used in all subjects and in secondary schools, government-copyrighted textbooks are used in Korean, Moral, and Korean History and government-authorized textbooks are used in the other subjects. Now, Korean government plans to increase the number of government-authorized textbooks and to decrease the number of government-copyrighted textbooks. Thus, from 2009, when a newly revised National Curriculum will be implemented, government-authorized textbooks will be used in all subjects in the secondary schools and in some subjects such as Music, Arts, and Physical Education of the primary schools.
With this change, textbook authorization will be the key principle of Korean textbook issuance policy. In general, textbook authorization system, having less interference of the national government in the development of textbooks, is expected to enable to develop textbooks with more creativity than in the government-copyrighted system. Contrary to the general expectation, however, it is generally agreed that textbook authorization system in Korea has not succeeded in the development of more creative and more diverse textbooks. So this paper purports to suggest the improvement strategies in the hope of the expansion of textbook authorization system and establishment of a new textbook authorization system in Korea which will enable to develop textbooks with more creativity and more diversity.

Features of textbook authorization system in Korea
Textbook authorization system is a system with which a government indirectly interferes in the authorship of textbooks. In textbook authorization system, private/commercial publishers conduct researches and develop textbooks strictly following the "guidelines in the writing of textbooks" suggested by the national government. When the textbooks get a "pass" in the review by the national government, the publishers can issue and provide them for schools. The national government's interference in the development of textbooks is made in a very obvious and direct manner although the private/commercial publishers are the agency of the issuance of textbooks: first of all, the textbooks are examined according to the "guidelines in the writing of textbooks" and the "checkpoints of government authorization", and secondly, if a need arises, the textbooks should be revised and re-examined for the "inappropriate" part in the textbook.

Stages of review for the government authorization
Development of government-authorized textbooks goes through the following 4 stages: 1) preparation for government textbook authorization 2) writing of textbooks 3) review 4) selection, production and provision.

In the first stage of preparation for textbook authorization review, the MOEHRD announces the "guidelines in the writing of textbooks" and the "checkpoints of government authorization" after the official announcement of the National Curriculum. In the second stage, writers and publishers make a plan of writing, write textbooks and apply for government authorization. In the third stage, the national government examines candidates through two-step reviews and announces "pass" and "fail". In the final stage, schools choose one of the government-authorized textbooks and order them, and then publishers produce them and supply them for the schools.

Annual review
The authorized textbooks which are now in use have been made through years according to an annual authorization review plan. Textbooks for junior high schools
were reviewed for three years, each year for each grade. Textbooks for senior high schools were examined for two years: in the first year, the textbooks of compulsory subjects for freshmen were reviewed; in the second year, textbooks of optional subjects were reviewed. The reason why annual review system was introduced instead of concurrent review was to uplift the quality of textbooks because it will reduce the burden of writing many textbooks at the same time and it also helps to review the textbooks more thorough and strictly.

Table 1. Flowchart of the making of government authorized textbooks in the 7th National Curriculum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation for government authorization</th>
<th>Writing of textbooks</th>
<th>Review</th>
<th>Selection, production and provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. official announcement of the National Curriculum</td>
<td>8. applying for the government authorization</td>
<td>9. appointment of the review committee (MOEHRD)</td>
<td>16. provision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. announcement of review plan and the guidelines for the writing of textbooks</td>
<td>7. editing (publishers)</td>
<td>10. reception of the review copies and making a basic research (KICE)</td>
<td>15. printing, bookbinding, publishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. appointment of the agency for government authorization</td>
<td>6. making a plan of writing (writers)</td>
<td>11. review of textbooks (2-step reviews), review of teachers' manuals (2-step reviews) final judgment</td>
<td>14. selection and order (schools)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. announcement of the checkpoints for government authorization</td>
<td>5. making a contract with writers (publishers)</td>
<td>12. announcement of pass and fail (MOEHRD)</td>
<td>13. sending display copies to schools</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Separate reviews of textbooks and teachers' manuals

In Korea, review for government authorization is made of textbooks and teachers' manuals. Teachers' manuals are reviewed when their counterpart textbooks are accepted in the review. If teachers' manuals do not succeed in the review, the acceptance of the counterpart textbooks is cancelled. That is to say, the acceptance of textbooks is not complete until the counterpart teacher's manuals are accepted in the review. As a new system of separate review of textbooks and teachers' manuals was introduced for the 7th National Curriculum, a new set of standard for teachers' manuals for review was made. The review of teachers' manuals has the same procedure as in the review of government-authorized textbooks.

Checkpoints for the government authorization of textbooks and teachers' manuals

The checkpoints which are newly introduced for the review of textbooks and teachers' manuals have three characteristics, when compared with the previous ones applied in Korea. Firstly, a new checkpoint of "originality" was introduced to encourage developing a new type of textbooks. Secondly, a standard for the form and style of textbooks was levelled up to encourage diversity in the overall design of
textbooks. Thirdly, separate checkpoints for the review of teachers’ manuals were introduced for heightening of the quality of teachers’ manuals.

Korean checkpoints for the review of textbook authorization have three sets: common checkpoints, subject-specific checkpoints, teachers’ manual checkpoints.

**Common checkpoints** are made up of basic necessary conditions such as observance of law and regulation, compliance with copyright, and generality of content. Its judgement is made either of “yes” or “no”. The review with common checkpoints is for the checking of observance, not for the judgement of the quality of content. So a textbook which has a negative evaluation even in only one head is eliminated in the review.

**Subject-specific checkpoints and teachers’ manual checkpoints** are made firstly centring on the components which can be applied to all subjects and then the specific areas of judgement vary according to the characteristics of a subject. Subject-specific checkpoints are made up of six areas of judgement while teachers’ manual checkpoints are made up of seven areas of judgement. Evaluation of a quality is made on the scale of A, B, C. If a textbook or a teachers’ manual has earned more than two C’s out of 15 items, it is judged as a failure in the review.

### (1) Common checkpoints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>judgement area</th>
<th>focus</th>
<th>judgement</th>
<th>remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. agreement to the spirit of Constitution</td>
<td>1. Does it have any content which denies or disparages the national constitution of ROK? 2. Does it unjustifiably advertise or disparage any country, religion, organization or a class?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. agreement to the Education Law, and the National Curriculum</td>
<td>3. Does it have any content which does not agree to educational belief and goals?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. copyright</td>
<td>4. Does it have any content which is guilty of plagiarism and breach of copyright?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. generality of content</td>
<td>5. Does it have any prejudice of a writer or an individual’s private views which are not accepted in general?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(2) Subject-specific checkpoints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>judgement area</th>
<th>Focus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. observance of the National Curriculum</td>
<td>1. Does it faithfully reflect the features, goals, content, teaching/learning methods, and evaluation suggested in the National Curriculum?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Are the level and scope of content appropriate for the characteristics of the given grade? Is the content organized with a consideration of the interrelationship among the grades?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Does it have any wrong content, mistakes or prejudice?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Does it have any content which disparages, distorts, defends, or overestimates any specific person, gender, province or any article of commerce?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Does it reflect properly interdisciplinary educational content (democratic citizenship education, character education, environment education, economy education, energy education, work spirit education, consumer education, unification education, Korean culture identity education, international understanding education, marine knowledge education, information education, gender equity education) in a relevant chapter?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Is the amount of content appropriate? Is it organized so as to encourage further study?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. selection and organization of content</td>
<td>7. Does it suggest teaching/learning methods appropriate for the achievement of subject educational goals?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Does it suggest appropriate methods of collecting, analyzing and utilizing information and educational materials?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9. Does it suggest appropriate methods and tasks of evaluation which agree to the goals, content and methods of the subject education?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. teaching/learning methods</td>
<td>10. Does it observe the spelling and transcription rules of &quot;Korean orthography rules&quot; &quot;Standard language rules&quot; &quot;Loanword transcription rules&quot; &amp; &quot;Roman alphabet transcription rules&quot;?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. orthography and transcription</td>
<td>11. Do the form and setup (template, page number, colours) reflect the checkpoints in the writing of textbooks?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12. Is the overall design attractive? Does the design utilize the space effectively?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13. Are the illustrations and photographs clear and organized creatively?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. editing, form and setup</td>
<td>14. Is the overall design attractive? Does the design utilize the space effectively?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15. Are the teaching/learning methods original?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(3) Teachers' manual checkpoints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>judgement area</th>
<th>Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| I. introduction to the textbook and its curriculum | 1. Does it explain the subject curriculum faithfully? Does it introduce new trends of the subject curriculum?  
2. Does it suggest teaching/learning/evaluation methods appropriate for the achievement of subject educational goals?  
3. Does it suggest specifically the perspective, and the organization system of the given textbook? Does it explain the organization of the teachers' manual? Does it suggest annual lesson plan?  
4. Does it suggest methods of flexible utilization of textbook and curriculum implementation? |
| II. organization | 5. Is it organically and conveniently organized using the overview, details, and appendix?  
6. Is each lesson systematically organized so as to teach the content effectively?  
7. Does it provide teaching plan and materials appropriate for tracking? |
| III. teaching/learning methods | 8. Does it suggest various teaching/learning methods to stimulate the interests of students?  
9. Does it suggest teaching/learning activities appropriate for the goals, materials and educational content?  
10. Does it suggest evaluation standard which agrees to the goals, content, teaching/learning methods? Does it give particular examples of evaluation? |
| IV. introduction to the utilization of materials | 11. Does it introduce cutting-edge materials which are helpful to the education and subject education research using both Korean and international resources?  
12. Does it suggest the methods of utilization of a variety of reference points such as multi-media educational materials? |
| V. orthography and transcription | 13. Does it observe the spelling and transcription rules of "Korean orthography rules" "Standard language rules" "Loanword transcription rules" & Roman alphabet transcription rules"? |
| VI. editing, form and setup | 14. Is the overall design attractive? Does the design utilize the space effectively? |
| VII. originality | 15. Is the overall design attractive? Does the design utilize the space effectively? |

**Procedures**

The MORHRD organizes the Textbook Authorization Review Committee (TARC). The TARC is made up of researchers and reviewers who are appointed among teachers, professors, officials in the MOEHRD, and researchers in the Korea Institute of Curriculum and Evaluation (KICE).

Procedures of review for textbook authorization are as follows. Organization of the TARC (MOEHRD) → acceptance of the review copies (KICE) → introductory survey (researchers) → main review (committee members) → final judgement on textbooks & teachers' manuals (committee members) → announcement of the final results (MOEHRD)
Table 2. Procedures of textbook authorization in the Republic of Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stages</th>
<th>area of judgement</th>
<th>details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>organization of review committee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acceptance of review copies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introductory survey</td>
<td>* content</td>
<td>The report of the introductory investigation plays as an essential reference point to the main investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* orthography</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* vocabulary check</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* design</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main review of textbooks¹</td>
<td>* application of the common checkpoints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* application of the subject checkpoints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>checking the revised part</td>
<td>The textbooks which are not revised as required by the Committee are rejected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main review of teachers' manuals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>application of the common checkpoints</td>
<td>The same with the main investigation of textbooks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>application of the subject checkpoints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>checking the revised part</td>
<td>If teachers’ manuals are rejected, the counterpart textbooks will be rejected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final judgement</td>
<td>* pass/fail</td>
<td>Authorized only when both textbooks and teachers’ manuals have passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>announcement of the final results</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Problems and alternatives of the textbook authorization system in the Republic of Korea

Textbook authorization system in Korea has consistently evolved since 1945 when the Republic of Korea started. In particular, in the 1990s, many developments have been made including the expansion of government-authorized textbooks, annual review system, separate review of textbooks and teachers’ manuals, and modification of the review checkpoints. However, the present textbook authorization system leaves much to be changed. This paper purports to investigate the problems and explore the solutions, focusing on the review cycle, the scope of review, review checkpoints, principles of review judgement, and the number of authorized textbooks per subject.

Review cycle

As there is no regular cycle of review for textbook authorization in Korea, it is impossible to discuss review cycle per se. Government authorization is effective until the next revision of the National Curriculum. But as the cycle of revision of the

¹ The number of the authorized textbooks is decided by the TARC
National Curriculum is not designated in the education-related law and regulation, revisions are made irregularly, depending on the politico-social changes in Korea. So there is no predicting the government-authorized textbook review cycle, as it is subordinate to the revision of the National Curriculum. It is a custom that without the revision of the National Curriculum, textbooks are not revised. It means that the review cycle of textbooks varies from 5 to 10 years.

Irregular review of the government-authorized textbooks brings about the following problems.

1) The difficulty of preparation for the review: Irregular review makes both the agency of review (MOEHRD & KICE) and the applicants (writers/publishers) it difficult to prepare for the review as the time of review is not predictable. It is not until the announcement of the date of review that agents and applicants can recruit personnel and secure budget for the preparation of the review. Irregularity of review makes it difficult for both agents and applicants to have specialty in this task.

2) Impossibility of issuance of new edition: Review of textbooks is made only once at each revision of the National Curriculum. Once authorized, the textbooks are used until a new revision of the National Curriculum. As the authorization review is made only once for each National Curriculum, it is impossible to make a new revised edition of authorized textbooks.

3) Irregularity of the valid term of authorized textbooks: As the revision cycle of the National Curriculum decides the authorization cycle of textbooks, the valid term of authorized textbooks varies unpredictably without a justifiable educational reason. The valid term of authorized textbook in use now is expected to extend to 9 years as the textbooks which will reflect the requirements of the current revision of the National Curriculum will be used gradually from the year 2009. The period of 9 years is almost as twice the length of the previous 5-year-valid term of authorized textbooks.

Thus it is necessary to introduce a four-year-cycle of textbook authorization.

An example of the plan of 4-year-cycle of textbook authorization is suggested in the following table. In primary schools, textbooks for some subjects will be authorized with the next implementation of the revised National Curriculum. So the following example includes the authorization of the textbooks ranging from grades 1 to 12.

| Table 3. Annual review plan for textbook authorization in a four-year-cycle |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Division        | 1st year        | 2nd year        | 3rd year        | 4th year        |
| primary schools | grade 1-2       | grade 3-4       | grade 5-6       |
| junior high schools | grade 7 | grade 8 | grade 9 |
| senior high schools | grade 10 | grade 11-12 |
Expected results of the introduction of a four-year-review cycle are as follows.

1) A standing organization will be established which is in charge of the review for textbook authorization. It will result in the accumulation of experience and the specialization in textbook authorization which are expected to contribute to the enhancement of the quality of textbooks.

2) Continual revision and issuance of a new edition of textbooks will be made possible as the review will be made regardless of the revision cycle of the National Curriculum.

3) Systematic preparation and implementation of the review for textbook authorization will be made possible as the valid term of authorized textbooks is invariably 4 years. In particular, as the time of review is predictable, publishers can have enough time to research, develop, write, edit, revise and improve textbooks.

Scope of review

The review for government authorization is confined to textbooks and teachers' manuals. In the previous period of the National Curriculum, simultaneous review of textbooks and teachers' manuals are made. But now, the review of textbooks and teachers' manuals are made sequentially. And when teachers' manuals do not pass, the textbooks matching the rejected teachers' manuals which passed the review are cancelled.

This kind of separate review of textbooks and teachers' manuals has the following problems.

1) One fundamental question arises whether it is a rational decision to cancel the authorization of textbooks only because the counterpart teachers' manuals have some shortcomings.

2) Another fundamental question arises whether it is desirable to review teachers' manuals. One can argue that review should not be extended to teachers' manuals because teachers' manuals are not for students but for teachers.

The suggested alternatives are as follows.

1) Teachers' manuals may be excluded from the review for government authorization. As the quality of teachers' manuals will exert an influence upon the choice of textbooks by schools, national governments need not examine teachers' manuals themselves. When teachers' manuals are exempt from the review, originality of a writer or an editor will emerge clearly.

2) Teachers' manuals for primary schools are examined while teachers' manuals for secondary schools are exempt from the review because a teacher in primary schools who should teach all subjects tends to heavily depend on teachers' manuals.
**Review checkpoints**

Korean government takes control of authorized textbooks in two ways. First, it controls through guidelines in the writing of textbooks, and second, through the checkpoints of textbook authorization. These twofold controls decidedly influence the results of review.

But guidelines in the writing of textbooks and the checkpoints of government authorization have problems as follows.

1) There have been many complaints about the guidelines in the writing of textbooks. Some people even go far to saying that there is nothing worthy of attention except a reference to the number of pages, the number of colours, and template. This acrid criticism comes from the fact that "guidelines" are made up of very abstract and general statements and overlap with the checkpoints of review.

2) Detailed specifications of guidelines and checkpoints contribute to the uniformity of textbooks rather than to the enhancement of the quality of textbooks. It results in the negative interference in furtherance of originality and diversification.

Alternatives are as follows.

1) Guidelines in the writing of textbooks should be annulled and only checkpoints of textbook authorization should be suggested. If the number of pages, the number of colours, and template should be specified, the regulation concerning these points may be included in the checkpoints of government authorization.

2) Authorization checkpoints should be minimized and expressed in clear terms. And the textbooks meeting the requirements of the minimum standard should be authorized. Authority of judgement should be transferred from the national government to local schools so that teachers may compare a variety of textbooks and choose the best for themselves.

**Principles of review judgement**

The principles of review judgement of “pass” or “fail” have two stages.

First, in the first main review of textbooks by the common checkpoints, textbooks with one "yes" for any head will fail. Second, in the first main review of textbooks by the subject-specific checkpoints, textbooks with more than two Cs on the scale of A, B, C will fail.

This principle means that textbooks with only one "yes" among five heads by the common checkpoints will fail. For example, if a textbook has got "yes" to the question of "Does it include any prejudice of a writer or an individual's private view which is not accepted in general?" will fail without any opportunity of the elimination of the problematic statements or of revision, although the textbook has been developed for a long time and has good points in other areas. Sometimes, the standard of "academic fallacy" or an "established theory" is a moot question. So the need to relax the regulation or to give an opportunity of revision arises.
And there is another problem with the principle that a textbook with more than 2 Cs by the subject-specific checkpoints will fail. As there are 15 evaluation areas, a textbook with 12 As and only 3 Cs will fail, while a textbook with 15 Bs will pass.

Former review committee members pointed out the problem in the survey with regard to the appropriateness of the principle of review judgement. They respond that sometimes a textbook which has many problems pass just because it does not make a big mistake, while a textbook which is excellent in general will fail just because a mistake was found in a small part of the textbook.

Alternatives are as follows.

1) In the common checkpoints, the principle of review judgement should be changed from the present state of giving "yes" or "no" to giving A, B, & C. A better principle is suggested as the following. A textbook that has Bs in more than half of the evaluation areas, or which has one C should fail. Otherwise, we should encourage the revision of a textbook by giving an opportunity to change problematic parts for the improvement of the quality of a textbook.

2) In the subject-specific checkpoints, the principle of review judgement should be changed from the present state of giving A, B, & C to giving scores such as 3, 2, or 1. A textbook that has got less than some predetermined score in total should fail. Or it is better to reduce the evaluation areas from the present 15 ones to 7 or 8 ones, then it will be more reasonable for the textbooks getting three Cs to fail in the review.

Number of government-authorized textbooks per subject

There has been much discussion on the number of the government-authorized textbooks per a subject of the same grade. Reflecting the content of the discussion, the number has been changed many times. Until 1980, the maximum number of government-authorized textbooks per subject was 5, between 1980 and 1990s, the number was 8, and now the limitation is eliminated. Now the number of the government-authorized textbooks per subject of the common curriculum is 7 to 16, while that of the government-authorized textbooks for optional subjects is 1 to 18.

So the number of the government-authorized textbooks per subject varies greatly depending on subjects and grades. The number of the government-authorized textbooks for core subjects such as mathematics, social studies, science, and English is 8 to 16. Among optional advanced subjects, the number of the government-authorized textbooks for "literature" is 18, the largest, but the number of the government-authorized textbooks for "Law and Society", "Spanish II", and "Chinese Character and Classics" is only one.

Some people argue that textbook authorization without the limitation of maximum number of authorized textbooks per the same subject makes too many textbooks pass the review. Considering the fact that Japan which heavily depends on textbook authorization system, USA which depends on approval system or France which rather freely permits the publication of textbooks respectively has more or less 5
different kinds of textbooks per each subject, one can say that we have too many kinds of government-authorized textbooks per each subject.

Now the average number of government-authorized textbooks for each subject is 12. But the number of the government-authorized textbooks which occupies more than 10% of the market share is 5, which means that 5 different textbooks for each subject can make a profit in Korea and the market share of the top 5 ranked textbooks is more than 90%. This situation gives an occasion to the argument that there should be some regulation on the number of the government-authorized textbooks for each subject. But it is not desirable to confine the number of the government-authorized textbooks bureaucratically. Rather it would be recommendable to let the number of the government-authorized textbooks decided by the principle of market.

Alternatives are as follows.

1) In order to encourage publishers to develop higher-quality textbooks, the national government should judge only whether a textbook meets the minimum standard, let each school and teacher judge the quality of a textbook, and abolish the present system of an equal distribution among publishers of textbook sale profits. Now the system of an equal distribution of textbook sale profits is in force to prevent superheated competition and unfair bargain in textbook market. As the profits are equally distributed among the publishers regardless of the number of sold copies in the present system, publishers tend to have the strongest interest only in "pass or fail", and do not care for quality management and the volume of sales once they have their textbooks authorized.

2) Abolition of the system of an equal distribution of the textbook sale profits will lead publishers to compete with one another for quality. This will have another effect. That is to say, abolition of the system of an equal distribution of the textbook sale profits will prevent a publisher which does not have specialty in the development of textbooks from coming to the textbook market. And some publishers will transform themselves into subject-specialization publisher to influence a textbook market of a specific subject.
Textbook Evaluation in East Africa: some practical experiences

James McCall

The author was an Adviser to the Kenyan Ministry of Education during the period of the Kenya Textbook Project.

The focus of the Strengthening of Primary Education Project (SPRED) which has operated in Kenya in recent years has been on budgetary support to provide learning materials to needy primary school pupils. The Project followed on from a previous programme of support, SPRED 2, and also adopted much of the basic methodology and principles of the Government of Kenya/Royal Netherlands Embassy programme of textbook support operational in the period 1997-1999.

Underlying all donor involvement in textbooks is the principle of a unified system of provision, designed to allow for the smooth and efficient disbursement of funds from a variety of sources, including both donor and government. A second central feature of textbook projects is that they must contain a comprehensive methodology for evaluating textbooks, whether that evaluation is carried out by a committee or by individual teachers in schools. Ideally, detailed Mark Sheets should be designed for this purpose. The Kenya Textbook Project closely followed these general principles.

Writing and editorial quality

The single most significant criterion for evaluating submitted textbooks is whether or not they cover the curriculum in a satisfactory manner. The Mark Sheets should make allowance for the award of high marks if this criterion is met in an entirely satisfactory way. Similarly, submissions can receive a very low mark if the publisher has not dealt properly with the crucial issue of relevance to the curriculum.

Some of the books submitted by publishers may have been published originally for a country other than Kenya. If the book has been produced for Uganda, or for another country in the region, perhaps not many changes will be required. On the other hand, depending on the subject, many changes may be necessary. The evaluator’s task is to assess how well the specific needs of the Kenyan curriculum have been fitted in to a textbook which may have had its origins elsewhere in the region.

The writing style is also a very important factor in evaluation. Every author has a different style, but every good author will modify his style to suit the needs of the reader. Some of the most significant questions to be asked are:

- Is the level of writing acceptable for the average child in the grade for which the book is intended?
Is the level of writing consistent throughout, i.e. is there the same level of difficulty at the end of the book as there is at the beginning?

Is there a glossary, and if not should one be added or prepared by the teacher?

Are sentences of a suitable length?

Are there too many words on the average line, or is the average about right? This issue is of course closely connected to the question of design and presentation.

Is the vocabulary acceptable for the intended audience?

All publishers - and all authors too - want to establish a reputation for attention to detail. Grammatical errors, misprints and inconsistent spelling are perhaps less important in a novel where the primary purpose is to entertain rather than to educate (although even here a good publisher will insist on high standards). In a school textbook, accuracy and correctness are not just desirable but essential. So when evaluating a text evaluators should look out for spelling errors, inconsistency in the treatment of spelling or the treatment of the subject-matter of Illustrations, and inconsistency in the use of chapter-headings, sub-headings and captions.

Other questions to ask include:
- is the text factually accurate, clear and unambiguous?
- has the author included all the latest statistics or current information available?
- has the author included all the latest developments in his subject?

As part of the Kenyan project, the Ministry of Education supported a detailed training programme which introduced publishers to the demands of competitive tenders. This was done partly to ensure that both larger more experienced publishers and smaller indigenous companies approached the project with similar knowledge and skills.

**Design and presentation**

The assessment of presentation and design is a very important part of the textbook evaluation process because good presentation and design can have such a positive effect on readability - and bad design can make the textbook difficult or impossible to read and understand.

Good design is an aid to readability - bad design can make a book almost unreadable. Good design has to do with the use of space, the relationship between text and illustrations, and even the relationship between text and ‘white space’. Good design is design which is above all sensitive to the reader’s needs - not just attractive design for its own sake.

A book which is well-designed is easy to use and easy to handle. It does not put obstacles in the way of the reader, either by making too many demands on him (type which is small and difficult to read, or illustrations which are drawn to the wrong
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

scale) or too few demands (layout and type which are better suited to much younger readers).

Several of the most important criteria have to do with typeface and typesize, and general clarity of presentation. Consistency in design is also very significant. If one section of text is treated in a certain typographic style, all other examples of that kind of text should be treated in the same style - activities and experiments come in to this category, for example.

The quality of printing is also an important element in the presentation of the textbook. Whether the book is printed in black ink only, or in full colour, it should above all be clear and even, with the same consistency of ink on all pages. Where the book is in two colours (black plus one other), sensible use should be made of the second colour so that it serves as an aid to comprehension.

There should be a minimum amount of ‘show-through’ - illustrations on one side of the page should not be visible on the other side (they should not ‘show through’). Where show-through does occur, the text can be difficult to read.

During the Kenyan Textbook Project there were several examples of pirated copies of textbooks appearing on the market. They were obviously pirated because the quality of the printing was poor. The lesson to be learnt was that teachers must return to the publisher books which are poorly printed and obviously pirated so that the publisher can take action to combat the piracy.

It is of course quite unusual to find a textbook which satisfies all these criteria in every single respect. The Mark Sheets are designed to help evaluators decide what positive characteristics they can identify in the textbooks under scrutiny, and to mark the textbook according to the number of positive features they can identify.

Illustrations

Illustrations must be an integral part of the textbook, and must complement the text and make a real contribution to learning outcomes.

There are two basic types of illustration. First, line drawings - which can either be in colour or simply in black only. Secondly, photographs - which again can be in black and white or in full colour.

Publishers will sometimes use two colours rather than full colour if that is sufficient - and it also helps to make the book cheaper.

Every illustration, whether it is a drawing or a photograph, must be clear and distinct. The commonest fault to be found with illustrations is that they are too small, making comprehension impossible.

Illustrations can also serve to support the educational principles upon which the textbook is based. If the publisher has prepared his material carefully, the
illustrations ought to reflect gender equality, awareness of cultural norms and other factors. Illustrations should be checked for the following features:

- Boys and girls are shown in the illustrations in roughly equal proportion. Their activities are not simply stereotyped - for example, boys may be seen doing work around the house, and girls fixing a bicycle.

- The illustrations depict both the urban and the rural environment. Children who live in remote rural areas may not be familiar with life in the city and should feel that the textbook also caters for their particular locality.

- The scenes featured in the illustrations should have both a local and an international dimension. Modes of transport (buses are a good example) should include the types of buses which are familiar to children in their own country, as well as illustrations of transport systems from other countries which can help to widen the child’s experience.

There are other types of illustrations, apart from line drawings and photographs, which can be used effectively in textbooks.

Charts of various kinds can be used, notably bar charts where information (usually statistical) can be incorporated into the text. The question to ask is: does this particular way of presenting the material make it easier to understand? Or could the information have been presented equally easily as straightforward text?

These considerations were of particular importance in the Kenyan context on account of the great variety of locations of the potential readers, ranging from arid desert to coastal towns and encompassing both remote rural communities and sophisticated city environments.

Methodology

A textbook must be partly judged by the methodology which underlies its content and presentation. The methodology should be apparent in both the text and the illustrations, and in the activities and exercises as well as the main body of the text.

In the context of the textbook, the methodology employed has to do with the ways in which the authors achieve their teaching objectives. In the best textbooks, the authors will employ a variety of devices to ensure their objectives are met successfully.

The activities which are included in the text should always be relevant to the concerns of the reader. One of the most common weaknesses in this area is the inclusion of activities which do not relate to the pupil’s everyday life. Another weakness is to pitch the content of the activity section at too high a level.

In response to the objectives of the revised curriculum, textbooks should encourage active learning, and should avoid learning by rote. Here the textbook should be seen as a vehicle for interpreting the curriculum, and for producing stimulating and
interesting avenues to learning. It should not simply reproduce facts, figures and formulae to be learnt by heart.

Rote learning from textbooks was a common phenomenon throughout East Africa (and in other parts of the continent also). The new generation of textbooks introduced by the Kenyan project was specifically designed to steer teachers and pupils away from rote learning and to encourage techniques of personal investigation and discovery and group activities.

The text should also introduce various skills in an appropriate way. These skills should include both individual and group skills, at a variety of levels of difficulty. Particular emphasis should be placed on the development of problem-solving, with examples of various kinds of problems and methods of finding solutions.

Any good textbook will reflect the conditions of the country for which it was written and the specific details of the curriculum. A publisher can do this in a number of ways.

First, he can write a textbook specifically for a given curriculum (in this case the Kenyan curriculum). If the publisher chooses this method, he has a free hand to interpret the curriculum as he thinks fit, in the most attractive way he can devise, without reference to any other textbook.

Alternatively, he can base his textbook on an existing textbook produced for a curriculum which is broadly similar to the Kenyan one, (the Ugandan one, perhaps) but replacing Ugandan material with Kenyan material where relevant to produce an end result which is Kenyan in its orientation and in its context.

Topical issues

The main criteria for evaluation of content have to do with coverage of the curriculum, accuracy of content, suitability of the language for the intended reader and other significant issues.

When assessing the content, evaluators should however also take into account the success of the textbook in coping with other emerging issues - in particular those concerned with health, male and female roles in society (gender issues), civic education, teaching and learning methodology which maximises pupil involvement, and factors relating to the environment and the influence of environmental issues on the pupils’ lives.

Textbooks will vary in the degree to which they cope with these challenges successfully, and evaluators should try to assess how well the publisher has managed to deal with them:

- How well does the textbook cover the problem of HIV/AIDS, and how clear are the explanations and commentary?
- Are there activities and examples which illustrate the dangers of pollution, both at a global level and in areas which directly concern the child, e.g. taking care not to leave litter, not to allow chemicals to discharge into rivers, and so on?

- Does the textbook include examples of both boys and girls involved in everyday activities?

- Does the textbook manage to avoid stereotyping, i.e. does it show boys carrying out tasks which may previously have been associated only with girls’ work (perhaps around the home, for example)? Remember to allow for the context in which the book will be used - what is accurate in one country or society may not reflect the practices in another.

- Is the reader made aware of the importance of participating in decisions which affect him or her in daily life? Examples can be drawn from the family (are decisions made jointly, or only by the head of the family?) and also the local community (is there an emphasis on taking part in local government, perhaps by running for office in the council or community group?)

- Does the textbook encourage the pupil to take an active part in the learning experience, to relate to other learners and co-operate with them, and to develop group as well as individual skills?

In the Kenyan project, the evaluation criteria placed particular importance on content and conformity to the curriculum, requiring a high threshold for acceptability: that is, each submission by a publisher had to gain a reasonably high mark if it was to be accepted and allowed to go forward to the next assessment stage. The criteria included promotion of positive social/cultural values and/or diversity as well as positive attitudes towards environmental diversity and promotion of gender responsiveness in text and illustrations.

The Kenyan project was judged to be a success not only because it gave teachers a choice of quality textbooks and effectively liberalised the book trade, which had previously been dominated by a state centralist publishing system. It was also judged successful because the evaluation and selection of the textbooks was based on a fair and objective system which gave no publisher or textbook a significant advantage over any other. The Kenyan project was in that respect, and in others also, a model for other publishing industries to follow.
Comparison of Korean and Namibia School Curriculum
with focus on Textbook Provision

Byong-Sun Kwak

Introduction

Considering the fact that Korean basic education with its national curriculum has contributed to the national economic development by supply of qualified man power during the past four decades, and has been identified as relatively competitive one in terms of students’ achievement mostly in mathematics and science as well, Korea’s curriculum sometimes becomes a subject of investigation at international agency like World Bank which has played active role in helping third world education. In connection with World Bank mission, the investigator had a chance to review the curriculum provision of Namibia with respect to Korea’s curriculum.

A comparative review of curriculum provision between Korea and Namibia may shed a light for us to understand in a deeper level on how the two countries with many contrasting context differ from each other and how share common nature in curriculum policy, framework and provision for students with focus on textbook. This study is to investigate similarity and difference of curriculum provision between Namibia and Korea by reviewing 1) curriculum policy, 2) the whole school curriculum framework, 3) content structure of mathematics and science subject and 4) textbook provision. Finally based on the comparative analysis, an implication for Namibia curriculum policy is suggested. The reason to choose mathematics and science subject for comparison is that the two subjects are mostly connected to the development of students’ scientific and logical thinking that is a substantial factor for a country to grow with the benefit of modern science and technology.

Considering the fact that Korean basic education with its national curriculum has contributed to the national economic development by supply of qualified man power during the past four decades, and has been identified as relatively competitive one in terms of students’ achievement as well, Korea’s curriculum will be overviewed first and Namibia’s curriculum will be described. In the description of Namibia’s curriculum, I add my own personal observation made through a field visit during 1-9 February 2003 in Namibia. And then, a comparative analysis will be made to identify commonality and difference between two countries’ curriculum.

Comparison will be made at a broad and macro level of curriculum policy, curriculum framework, and curriculum material provision rather than specific and detailed level. In many ways, the discussion for comparison tends to be speculative and interpretative rather than data based analytic one.
Korea’s Curriculum: Framework and Textbook Provision

Table 1. The National Common Basic Curriculum of Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Areas</th>
<th>Elementary School</th>
<th>Middle School</th>
<th>High</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Language</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moral Education</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Studies</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical Arts</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign Languages</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>68</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional Activities</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extracurricular Activities</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Total</td>
<td>830</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>986</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*) For grades 11 and 12: elective courses, 8 units for extracurricular activities, total: 44 units.

Current Curriculum Structure

Korea has maintained centralized curriculum decision making structure with 6-10 years term cycle revision. In the cyclical revision of curriculum as a continual process, it has always been bounded by an ideal Korean education, so called "Hongik Ingan (Korean pronunciation)" literally meaning "being beneficial to all people", which was laid down as a national ideal by the founder of the nation forty centuries ago. This ideal seems so universal in nature that any explanation and specific goals can be drawn from it. However, it has played a fundamental role of
philosophical guideline, which sheds light on the human value as an overriding direction of education.

In connection to this ideal of Hongik Ingan, one persistent educational direction set by a series of curriculum revision is the development of whole person. The national curriculum continuously reflects this ideal in the following way: The well-educated person is defined in curriculum as a person who is healthy, independent, creative and moral.

The current curriculum has been implemented from 2000 as the 7th revised one. The new revision addresses 10 national common basic curriculum from grade 1 to 10, elective-centered curriculum for grade 11-12, differentiated program for individual difference and expansion of school-based program. In general, the school curriculum comprises subject matters and extra-curricula activities. Subject matters are divided into compulsory and selective subjects. The 10 national common basic curriculum consisting of 10 subject matters including Korean language, moral education, mathematics, social studies, science, physical education, music, fine arts, and practical arts are compulsory. For grades 11-12, elective courses are offered in a variety of individual interests. The following Table 1 shows the national common basic curriculum. For grade 1 and 2, subjects are taught in integrated programs as shown in the Table 1. The number of each subject matter by grade is the total instructional hours a year.

**Textbook Provision**

Curriculum development is finalized by textbook provision. Textbook provision includes compilation of students’ textbooks and teachers’ guides and its distribution to students and teachers. In Korea, curriculum revision incurs development of new school textbooks and teachers’ guides.

New curriculum framework and subjects syllabus provide the very standards and sources for the development of textbooks and teachers’ guide for instruction. Textbooks are classified into three categories; the textbook in the first category is national textbook compiled under the copyright of the MOE, the textbook in second category is commercial textbook compiled by private publishing company under the review of MOE on the basis of open competition, and the textbook in the third category is approved book for school instruction by Local Education Authority or MOE, which is applied by school principal among books already published.

The first category textbook is mandatory for all teachers and students. Instructional materials for kindergarten, all textbooks for primary school and textbook of Korean language, national history, moral education and ethics of secondary school belong to the first category. The second category textbooks include textbooks of secondary school except the textbooks of Korean language, Korean history, moral education and ethics. For second category textbook, individual schools have to select one among several textbooks published for each subject instruction. For some high school subjects that have small number of students registered so that there is no
publishing company applying to compile textbook of that subjects, the MOE puts that subjects into the first category textbooks. In that case, the MOE develops the textbook of those subjects. Mostly textbooks consist of first category and second category books. The total number of textbooks from kindergarten through high school, developed in compliance with the seventh curriculum revision is 721.

In general, Korean textbooks have such characteristics:

First, the cost of textbook is relatively cheap. Reducing the cost of textbook associates two factors; one is the compacting way of organizing content of textbook, that is, textbooks are compiled with key concepts and essential components of subject knowledge, and the other one is the way of mass production. All textbooks are paperback.

Second, related to the first one, textbook is designed to convey the basic concepts and key structure of organized body of knowledge of each subject. That is why textbooks are main sources of learning and instruction and the content of textbook also serves as the absolute criteria for students’ achievement tests.

Third, textbooks are possessed by individual students for their ultimate sources of learning. Textbooks are personal property. Textbooks are compact and easy to carry on, and used as consumer goods.

Forth, school instruction tends to be textbook-centered teaching and learning process. It has positive and negative aspect. In a positive side, it is clear for both teachers and students what to teach and to learn. In a negative side, the instruction can be oriented to memorization of textbook content that may hamper the development of creative thinking.

Fifth, due to the fact that textbooks do not provide detailed explanation, side books for explanation and supplement of the textbooks are proliferating in private book market. As a result, students become dependent upon the side books for looking for easy answers, which may hinder the development of inquiring mind. In addition, parents tend to buy their children the side book that is much expensive than textbooks.

Even with authoritative definition of subjects and one-sided, textbook-centered teaching style hindering educational diversity, this government controlled textbook policy constitutes equal opportunity for all students in the access to the legitimate body of knowledge and experiences.

Namibia’s Curriculum

in Schools: A Policy and Information Guide (1999), and 5) Syllabi for Namibia Higher General Certificate for Secondary Education/NHGCSE. Based on these documents, some characteristics of Namibia’s curriculum are described in the following.

**New Basic Education Curriculum in Document**

Namibia’s basic education in formal education system is 10 years, and consists of three phases: Low Primary, Grades 1-4, Upper primary, Grades 5-7 and Junior Secondary, Grades 8-10.

According to the Constitution of the Republic of Namibia, education is free and compulsory from the age of 6 to the age of 16, or the end of primary education, whichever comes first. In order to provide 10 years basic education, the Ministry of Basic Education and Culture sets a Broad Curriculum guide providing the framework for devising subject syllabuses and materials to be used in various subjects and areas of learning so that the goals and aims will be put into practice in a consistent way. The basic education curriculum guide is based on the government responsibility of education by Constitution, “education for all” proclaimed as nation’s ultimate goal at the World Conference for All in Jomtien, Thailand, 1990, and “First Call for Children” ideal appealed at the World Summit for Children in New York, 1990. By implementing these universal educational ideals, Namibia sets broad policy goals such as Access, Quality, Equity, Lifelong Learning and Democracy.

Based on these overall guidelines, Namibia’s curriculum structure for formal basic education is depicted in the following Table 2. Table 2 shows time allocation of each subject per week by grade level. It is shown that instructional times for language, mathematics, and sciences are over 60% of the whole instructional hours throughout grade 1 to 10.

**Namibia Curriculum Observed**

Even it was a very limited period of time and a limited number of regional offices and schools, the investigator had a chance for direct observation on Namibia school situation, which gives me a valuable opportunity to understand Namibia school curriculum practiced in schools for its own right. Also I was able to see students go to schools on the streets and discuss with teachers and students on their concerns through an occasional visit at a junior secondary school in Tsumeb.

Here is the overall conclusion drawn from my observation:

First, teachers are prepared for themselves to meet the requirement of curriculum implementation and to do their best in helping students learn better. Teachers discussed with me in-group or individual bases were aware well of their mission caring students to learn for themselves and had keen interests in keep growing their professional capacity through various in-service training programs. When I talked teachers at a junior secondary school in Tsumeb, they told me that they were
willingly staying at school to help students who need supplementary learning after regular teaching hours. Also they showed their keen interest on their continuing development for professional teaching capacity. They told me that they attended in-service training program organized by regional office of basic education or by teacher centers. Teachers’ positive attitude and willingness in this kind was generally shown at all schools I visited regardless of school level.

Table 2. Pilot Curriculum Guide for Formal Basic Education (grades 5-10)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area of Learning</th>
<th>Grades 5-7</th>
<th></th>
<th>Grades 8-10</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>%T</td>
<td>Subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linguistic and Literary</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Another Language</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Another Language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basic Information Science</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Basic Information Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematical</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Scientific</td>
<td>Natural Science and Health Education (Health Education and Environmental Awareness)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>Life Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Social Studies (History; Civics; Geography; Economics) (Guidance in Grade 7)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>Physical Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social and Economic</td>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>History</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aesthetic</td>
<td>Arts (Music; Dance; Drama; Art)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>Arts-in-Culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spiritual and Ethical</td>
<td>Religious Education Assembly</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Religious and Moral Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Life Skills</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>Physical Education and Health Awareness</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Physical Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technological</td>
<td>Options: One of:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>Pre-Vocational Option 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Craft + Technology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Or Pre-Vocational Option 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Home Ecology (Needlework, Clothing + Home Science)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Elementary Agriculture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>26 hrs 39</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>26 hrs 40 mins</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Co-Curricular Activities</td>
<td>School sport</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>School sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cultural activities</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Cultural activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Involvement of community</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Involvement of community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Activities promoting the ethos of the school</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activities promoting the ethos of the school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Educational tours</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Educational tours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Second, students whom I met were motivated well for their learning. When I interviewed three students at a junior secondary school at the town of Tsumeb, they responded that they like to go to school and are interested in subjects in mathematics and social studies. On the questions about their own future, they have positive view that they will develop their own career with hard working throughout their school education. In the classroom, students pay keen attention to teachers’ instruction. At
Collin High School, students were dictating what teacher wrote on the board for instruction.

Third, there was shortage of textbooks for primary and secondary students in the region where most of parents are relatively in a low socio-economic condition, which affects students’ achievement in subject learning. This conclusion is drawn from various observations at school sites and discussions with local education authorities and school teachers. School cannot provide textbooks for all students. Local office of basic education cannot afford enough budgets for schools to buy textbooks for all students. With the government budget, roughly 20% of textbooks can be purchased for students. These textbooks soon run out before the year of expected life span. No textbooks for students were identified through many occasions; students going to schools without any learning materials; students dictating teacher’s writing on the board where content of content was written down.

Forth, textbooks look thick and heavy hardbound with rich explanation or information. Their quality is compatible with that of textbooks in the western countries. They are designed being used for several years as loaned goods. Unfortunately, researcher is not able to provide a concrete data on the cost of textbook, however, it is certain that the cost of textbook is not reasonable enough for the government to provide them for all students.

Fifth, there was wide disparity in school facilities and instructional qualities according to different socio-economic status of parents. It was identified that a senior secondary school with background of parents of high socio-economic status relatively was enjoying competent outcomes of school program by high achievement in the admission to higher education in domestic and abroad as well while other equivalent school only produced students to pass C or D grade level of each subject lesson as the average achievement. Low students’ achievement rampant mostly at native Namibian schools is caused by the lack of learning resource materials, at least the textbooks as the minimum learning resources.

Sixth, the damage of HIV/AIDS is real for some schools. It was identified that about 10% of students at a primary school are orphans due to parents’ death for HIV/AIDS. This endemic situation is a very negative harmful factor for schools to be threatened not for educational reasons but for external formidable circumstance destroying human survival.

In general, as Mr. Mutorwa, the Minister of Basic Education, Sports and Culture mentioned in his opening address of MHETEC, how to ensure equitable access to quality general basic education for all Namibian schools seems to be the ultimate policy task for the successful implementation of the school curriculum documented in the country. There is a disparity between the proclaimed curriculum in the document and the implemented curriculum in the schools.
Comparison

Similarity

With different historical, cultural and geographical context, Korean school curriculum and Namibian one share several commonalities in their respective curriculum framework and educational goal directions. Those are similarities between Korean and Namibian school curriculum.

First, the two countries have centralized curriculum decision-making mechanism, that is, central office of respective country has authority to decide and control the whole curriculum. In Korea Ministry of Education and Human Resource Development is the legitimate body in making decisions on curriculum. In the same vein, the Ministry of Education, Sports and Culture has the authority for curriculum development in Namibia.

Second, the two countries run similar institute and curriculum deliberation body in making decisions on curriculum. In Korea, Korean Educational Development Institute in the past played a leading role to conduct curriculum research and development and now Korean Institute for Curriculum and Evaluation succeeds that role. In Namibia, National Institute for Educational Development has similar function.

Third, the two countries’ curricula have similar educational goals and similar form of curriculum framework. The overall form of curriculum document is much similar in that respective document has educational goals, curriculum framework in terms of time allocations, managerial guidelines for teachers, guidelines for students achievement evaluation, etc.

Table 3. Subject Areas for 10 years’ Basic Education of Korea and Namibia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korea</th>
<th>Namibia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Korean Language</td>
<td>Linguistic and Literary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreign language (English)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moral education</td>
<td>Moral and Ethical Spiritual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Studies</td>
<td>Social and Economic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science</td>
<td>Natural Scientific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical arts</td>
<td>Technological</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Education</td>
<td>Physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music / Arts</td>
<td>Aesthetic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forth, the two countries have similar curriculum structure, that is, 10 years basic education curriculum, and two years learner centered curriculum for grades 11 and 12. It is same that the two countries set 10 years from grade 1-10 as the basic education period. In Korea, it is called as 10 years National Common Basic
Education Curriculum, while in Namibia 10 years’ formal basic education is designed.

Fifth, the two countries have similar subject areas for 10 years basic education, even the name of subjects are slightly different. As the Table 3 shows, Korea offers 10 subjects and Namibia 9 subject areas, but they are identical in the nature of respective domain of knowledge or realm of meanings.

Sixth, the two countries’ curricula give emphasis on balanced growth on the part of student achievement. Korean curriculum sets a whole person development as educational goal, while Namibian curriculum puts all round development.

Seventh, as a whole, the two countries emphasize language, mathematics and science subjects in the 10 years of basic education curriculum. The following Table 4 shows the portion of time allocation of language, mathematics and science subjects by grade. In Korea, language subjects include Korean language and English.

Eighth, the two countries have identical tendency that the time allocation of language and mathematics is gradually lessoning with the grade higher up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Mathematics</th>
<th>Science</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ko+</td>
<td>En</td>
<td>Ko+</td>
<td>En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>22.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>18.8</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>21.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ninth, the two countries offer selective courses for grade 11-12 on the basis of learner-centered learning.

Tenth, the two countries’ curricula share similar guidelines for implementation and students evaluation.
Eleventh, the two countries provide similar orientation program for the school beginner of first graders. In Korea, there is orientation program for the first graders called “we are the first graders”, while in Namibia, there is school readiness education program.

**Differences**

First, the first two grades from grade one and two in Korea are offered integrated programs such as “disciplined life”, “intelligent life”, “pleasant life” and “we are the first graders” beyond two traditional subjects Korean language and mathematics.

Two, Namibian curriculum gives heavy emphasis on linguistic and literary. As the Table 2 indicates, over 40% of time allocation for grade one and two and over 30% for rest of grades goes to language courses.

Third, Namibia has advantage in English than Korea by adopting English as the official language. In Korea, English is taught from grade 3 as the first foreign language. It gives a burden for students to master the English throughout the primary and secondary school.

Forth, the proportion of time allocation of Namibia science is sharply growing with the grade higher up. As the Table 3 indicates, Namibia students have two times more science instructional hours than Korean students between grade 8 and 10.

Fifth, Namibia curriculum seems more systematic than Korean curriculum in that it has relatively a consistent tendency in the articulation of time allocation while in Korean curriculum, the time allocation of Korean language, mathematics, and science by grade does not show a consistency.

Sixth, Korean curriculum includes school-based optional activities, which are expanding with the grade higher up. 68 hours for each grade of primary school, 136 hours for each grade of middle school and 204 hours for 10th grade of high school a year are given for optional activities.

Seventh, Korean MOE provides cheap textbooks for all students. Textbook is a minimum learning resources for students in Korea. It is highly uncertain in Namibia that how much content-specific learning resources of each subject matter in the curriculum are available to individual students. As far as textbook is concerned, Korean students are basically given textbooks as the basic learning resources.

**Discussion**

The school curriculum of Namibia and Korea in the form of document share common aspects in respective framework, educational goals, subject areas, way of implementation, emphasis on language, mathematics and science, and selective courses for grade 11 and 12. With different socio-political, educational and cultural context, it seems striking thing that two countries have similar curriculum framework.
In terms of scientific development, Namibia’s curriculum is more ambitious and intensive selection-oriented than Korean’s. That is, the portion of time allocation of mathematics and science of Namibia is higher than that of Korean one. As far as documented curriculum is concerned, the curriculum of Korea and Namibia are compatible with each other.

In general, Namibia’s curriculum seems very systematic and well structured for the development of disciplined capacity in coping with rapidly changing society. In order for this documented curriculum to affect the learning of growing generations, the content-specific learning resources should be arranged to all students in an equitable way. However well structured the documented curriculum may be, it can be a null curriculum for students who cannot reach the learning content for whatever reason. Null curriculum may affect students with a feeling of powerless or helplessness that is enemy of empowerment of learners. In researcher’s perception, there are a few students in Namibia who do not possess textbooks. If students are deprived from learning resources, they are hardly to keep their learning as accumulative process.

The effectiveness of school education depends on many complicated variables. It is common conclusion that mostly students achievement in academic courses is largely relied on socio-economic status of family, that is, family background is more powerful factor than school education in prediction of students’ academic achievement. However, in the situation where family cannot offer sufficient learning environment for their children, school must provide them with relevant learning experiences. Because school can be the only place for such culturally deprived students to get access to modern learning environment. The more students are exposed to learning environment, the greater their academic performance will be.

In this regard, Simmons, the World Bank staff, make it clear that ‘Textbook availability at the primary level may be an important influence on performance. An associated factor is the availability and use of a library at primary and early secondary grades. The policy implications include supplying a minimum number of texts or reading materials to all students.

Provision of textbook for all students is likely the most urgent task for Namibia government. That is, provision of textbook available for any students should be the ultimate goal in curriculum policy. In Korea, when it was liberated from Japan, the first thing done by the government was the publishing of Korean language and Korean history textbooks for all students. Even during the Korean War, textbooks were published and distributed to all students. There was no learning without textbooks in Korean education.

Young students read textbooks loudly in front of their parents. When the parents are illiterate, they can learn from their children how to read and write. This thing really happened in Korea during the period between 1940s and 1950s. It was possible through the medium of textbooks. In a sense, Korea’s educational competitiveness at basic education comes from textbook-centered instruction.
For most of native Namibian living in harmony with nature without abstract code culture, being literacy means a cultural revolution. Books represent code culture. Textbooks carry essential human knowledge and experiences regardless of space and time. Textbook provision is an indispensable precondition to the successful public education.

Textbook can be published in a cheaper way by compacting compilation and government monopoly policy. Cheap textbook without detailed explanation for all students seems educationally benefited better than expensive textbook with high quality for only limited number of student for the time being until the national economic development can afford high quality textbooks in a variety.

In order to ensure textbook provision for all students, priority is given to students of identified poor family. Equitable access to quality basic education can be realized by area specific project targeted for identified poor and aimed at providing them direct benefits.

References


These materials were obtained through "http://www.nied.edu.na" www.nied.edu.na.


Workshop 4

Design of learning materials
“The answer is found in the history book”
An analysis of the rhetoric of a textbook

Tom Wikman

In the year 2001 I exchanged textbooks with a German researcher. My shear was a civics textbook, *Staatsbürgerkunde 7*, from the German Democratic Republic (GDR). This book really got me puzzled. On a superficial level the book seemed to be so well written, using rhetorical means seldom seen in the textbooks of my own country. On the opening page one finds a huge quote from the program of the socialistic unity party (SED) stating that our age is characterized by the transition from capitalism to socialism. The discrepancy between the rhetoric of the textbook and the later development in Eastern Germany, with a fast transition to capitalism and with youth extremist movements contradicting the core message of the book, facilitated my interest to analyze *Staatsbürgerkunde 7*. As the actual edition of the book was printed in 1986, just a few years before the fall of the Berlin wall and “die Wende”, the big change in the German post war history, the analysis grew even more interesting. My interest also was enhanced by a claimed low interest for social issues among pupils in Finland. Could we possibly learn something from the way the society was presented in this totalitarian context? The aim of the study was to analyze the text, the questions and the illustrations in *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* in order to find out how the secondary school students in GDR were supposed to understand the society in the end of the communistic era. In other words, how did the textbooks writers try to convince the reader of the benefits of the GDR.

**Background**

Man is born indifferent to the aims of the society. The society is continually renewed through the development of its young members. Education therefore has to create appropriate knowledge about society and make the youth interested in it, if it is to survive. Communication is essential for society with school as the systematic transmitter of its resources and gains. As the society is too complex to be assimilated as such, the school has to create a simplified context by choosing the means for the transmission of the knowledge developed (Dewey, 1997). Textbooks are important rhetorical means in this process.

In Western views on the rhetoric of textbooks, the communication with a supposed reader has been emphasized. According to Crismore (1989) the author’s intentions and evaluation of the content could be shown so that readers could recognize the author’s plan and use it for constructing meaning. Good rhetorical texts, according to this view, illuminate a question thoroughly using different kinds of arguments and showing the authors’ intentions. In other words, the text should give the reader an opportunity to independent decisions. This has however apparently not been the
case, especially if the following description of textbooks is valid (Crismore, 1989, 144):

The corresponding role of student readers is to receive the facts passively from the truth-giving authority who wrote the text, and to memorize them, not to understand the facts or the author’s attitude towards them and not to use the facts to build a larger picture or to think critically about what the author said or did in the textbook.

In this view the reader is considered an uncritical receiver of information. According to Väisänen (2005) the standpoint of the author seldom is made clear in the textbooks. If however, argumentative reasoning is seen as a fundament of the democratic society, also the textbooks should, according to Åhlberg (1991), give the reader a possibility to practice this ability. The enhancement of critical thinking could be made by dealing with controversial issues and by raising the degree of uncertainty in textbooks.

This claim for critical thinking and independent decisions of the reader points at two different conceptions of textbooks. The first one is the “traditional” textbook that states important facts about the society without a critical distance to the subject. The youth is supposed to be socialized to democracy by books that just describe the democratic institutions. An underlying assumption is that democracy is good and that a reader therefore automatically will understand its benefits. In the other conception of textbook, critical thinking as a democratic virtue is emphasized. Democracy is considered a process continually reconstructed by its members. Static societies valuing the established habits of a social group also transmit the deficiencies of the society (Dewey, 1997). A continuously changing society would therefore benefit from a critical approach also in the textbooks.

Communistic theory considers man as a product of society. Educational literature from GDR shows that the aim of the education was not to socialize the individuals to an unchanged society (Berge, Klein & Salzwedel, 1975, 21):

(...s)ondern die Erziehung aktiver, für den Sozialismus engagierter Persönlichkeiten, die in Gemeinschaften Gleichberechtigter die gesellschaftliche Entwicklung vorantreiben, sich dabei selbst entwickeln, die verantwortlich und kritisch in den verschiedensten Formen der sozialistischen Demokratie, im Arbeitsprozess usw. mitplanen, mitarbeiten und mitregieren und ein glückliches, erfülltes Leben führen.

In this view there is an urge for critical thinking, but a critical thinking within the socialist democracy. The main focus is on developing “personalities engaged for socialism”. The question arises how a textbook with this aim is positioned to the two types of textbooks loosely outlined earlier in this section, i.e. how the socialistic personalities were supposed to be created.

Method

The questions in Staatsbürgerkunde 7 were primarily analyzed by categorizations developed by different researchers. This analysis gave an overall view of the learning quality of the questions, but it did not capture their ideological content. The
same problem was encountered when trying to use an earlier developed categorization for learning texts (Wikman, 2004) on the text of *Staatsbürgerkundе 7*. To identify the rhetoric of the book I developed categories by a phenomenological reduction identifying core concepts in the questions, the illustrations and the text. As a background I also made quantitative descriptions of the questions and the illustrations. Some of them will be referred to in the next chapter.

**Describing the ideal society**

*Staatsbürgerkundе 7* is divided into four chapters. The first one is an introduction positioning GDR within the socialistic world. The second describes the formation of GDR after the “liberation from the fascism”. The third chapter is the story of the “great achievements of the people” and the final fourth chapter deals with the “leading role of the working class and its Marxist-Leninist party”. The following categories were identified in the book: personification (1), communification (2), narrativation (3), enemification (4) and enthusiasmation (5).

**1. Personification.** Personification is defined as the ambition of the textbook writers to include the reader by showing the potential of individuals to participate in the building of the country. An initial example is the front cover of *Staatsbürgerkundе 7* that welcomes the reader by a close up of glad and happy looking people waving with red handkerchiefs. The picture is well chosen as a symbol for the whole book. It combines the effort of the textbook authors to present GDR as a common effort of the individuals and the Socialistic Unity Party (SED). The youth on the picture are dressed in blue shirts demonstrating their membership in the youth organisation of SED, Die Freie Deutsche Jugend (FDJ).

As a vast majority of the illustrations are dominated by males, the protagonists in the building of the socialistic society seem to have been males. Males taking space are politicians, from Lenin to Honecker, and workers. The miner Adolf Hennecke is taken as an example of the heroes of the working class. He is present both on photos, in questions and in narratives. The message is that the individual initiative is important and it is a patriotic deed to work (free) for the state. The social realistic male with well developed muscles is also present in posters and caricatures showing how militarism can be exterminated or why one should vote for the communists. The working class heroes are accompanied by statistics showing the importance of the working class and the growing amount of workers at the universities thus underlining the importance of workers and farmers just as communistic theory describes. Certain persons are considered especially important for the development of the country. They usually represent the SED.

---

1 Of all the illustrations 36 % were dominated by a male theme while 5 % showed women. Half of the illustrations were gender neutral and 12 % had an even proportion of women and men.
Workshop 4: Design of learning materials

An example on personification from the text is a section where the authors are reasoning why one should consider it interesting to participate in political activities. The section is presented as a pretended discussion between two persons and gives voice to a problem with youngsters not interested in politics.

In the following question personification is connected to patriotism:

Was willst du einmal werden? Überlege, wie du denn dem Staat nutzen kannst!

Though this question emphasizes the importance of individual initiatives, personification could not develop to mere individualisation. Many of the photos in Staatsbürgerkunde 7 show groups of people. One dominant character of the personification therefore is collectiveness. The message of the authors could be interpreted as “we are building this country together”. The collectiveness shown in the pictorial presentations is accompanied by questions:

Welche Vorzüge hat die sozialistische DDR, und was können wir Staatsbürger tun, um diese Vorzüge zu erweitern?

About 25% of all illustrations had some kind of groups as motive. The ratio of photos showing just one person was 10%. The individual initiative was considered important, but the aim was always to work for the collective.

2. Communification. The attempt to involve the reader to the communistic jargon and to the institutions of the communistic party nationally and internationally I label communification. Four quotes covering one page each dominate the beginnings of the chapters in Staatsbürgerkunde 7. By using four whole pages in this way to either quote the program of SED or to have leaders of the party to state the importance of SED, the presentation gets an institutionalized framing. The message seems to be that the development in GDR will happen with the party as the central tool. The SED is “a big force, which makes it possible for the working class to take the leading of the people”. Photos of important people in the party, both individuals and members gathered together on conferences, underline further the significance of SED.

A pupil reading the book was forced to use the communistic jargon. The following three questions could hardly be answered without using the concepts imperialistic, communism or working class:

Warum sind die aggressivsten imperialistischen Kreise unser aller Feind?
Wie haben die Kommunisten den Weg in eine bessere Zukunft bewiesen?
Warum ist die Arbeiterklasse die führende Kraft im Sozialismus?

The language is used in socializing the reader to communism. Another attempt in the same direction is the presentation of important dates in the development of the republic. The foundation of the SED is for instance highlighted with an illustration. Also different congresses in the history of the party are shown as icons.

Especially the final chapter about the “leading role of the working class and its Marxist - Leninist party” is a clear standpoint presenting the party as the most
important institution in GDR. The institutions usually found in textbooks of civics; president/king, parliament and legal institutions; seem to be substituted by the party. The high, institutional perspective is further supplemented by the descriptions of the many contacts GDR had with other countries in the socialistic world. It starts in the historical background where the heroic efforts of the Soviet Union are underlined. A question indicating this importance is for instance the following:

Wie half die Sowjetunion dem deutschen Volk bei der Überwindung der Kriegsfolgen?

Another example is a photo showing Soviet soldiers giving food to starving post war Berliners. A later photo shows Erich Honecker shaking hand with Fidel Castro, a concrete example of the initial statement that “socialism already is developing on many continents”.

3. Narration. Staatbürgerkunde 7 starts with emphasising the importance of “the last seventy years” thus pointing at the development of socialism that started with the Russian revolution in November 1917. The transition from the wartime Nazism to the righteous socialism is a constantly recurring theme throughout the book. An important “hero” in the stories is above all the Soviet Union, the army of which liberated Germany from the Nazis and helped with the initial food supply after the war.

Short narratives are put as excerpts into framed squares in the book. Prominent citizens tell their version of important historical events or accomplishments in their lives are highlighted. Also the foundation of SED in April 1946 is told as a story. All these small stories are parts of the main narrative with communism as the final goal.

Good stories also need villains.

4. Enemification means presenting capitalistic countries negatively and at the same time describing the own socialistic society as an idyll. Photos showing the Western world are, in contrast to the colour photos from GDR, in black and white. Also the themes, e.g. a queue at an employment office in West Germany and a NATO helicopter disembarking soldiers, build up the image of the enemy. The helicopter is followed by a close-up of a German biology teacher with her class standing under a blooming tree. Opposite the queue one finds a young kidney patient taken care of with modern equipment. Further a photo with flowers in the front shows an old folks home in Karl-Marx-Stadt.

In the text the contrasts between the idyllic socialism and the hard capitalism is described on various occasions. We can for instance read that in 1982 30 millions were unemployed in the capitalistic world while GDR assured the right to work for its inhabitants. Further a text is describing the free medical care of the citizens of GDR which is compared to the tremendously high costs for visiting a doctor in the USA.
Questions indicating enemification are for instance the following:

Informiere dich anhand der Tagespresse dieser Woche darüber, welche Konflikte es in imperialistischen Ländern gibt!

Warum versuchen die Ideologen des Kapitalismus, die SED anzugreifen und so den Werktätigen in der DDR zu schaden?

According to the authors of *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* there are forces in the imperialistic countries, especially in the USA, that have as goal to start a third world war because of the gains the military industry would get out of this. All development can thus be analyzed according to the economic forces in society. Where we, GDR, stand for peace and development, they, the imperialists, stand for aggression and war.

5. Enthusiasmation. Happy looking people meet the readers taking *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* in their hand. The same try to enthusiasm the reader continues through out the book. The inside cover shows Soviet soldiers raising the red flag and on the next spread young construction workers lay bricks in a new house. Workers build up the country under the wings of socialism.

For socialism nothing seems to be impossible. The first chapter of the book begins with a colour photo of the earth taken somewhere in the outer space with a “Multispektralkamera aus Jena”.

For socialism to reach success, struggle and power are essential. The struggle is initiated by Lenin as showed on a reproduction of a painting of the first steps of the Russian revolution in October 1917. The German after war history is exemplified by photos and charts showing the earth reform. The farms of the Nazis were divided between common people. Another type of photos in this field are those showing people marching for GDR under different kinds of slogans: “More workers and farmers to the universities” or “Away with the USA-Rockets – for a nuclear weapon free Europe”.

The enthusiasm has also infiltrated the statistics. All charts in the book, may it be about the production of potatoes or the amount of students with a master’s degree at universities, show a growing tendency. The message of the ever growing welfare can also be interpreted from the illustrations at large. A transparent but sure line goes from the post war poverty, when people got food from Russian soldiers, to the well organised very machine dense GDR of the eighties. Everything is developing and growing. This even applies to single photos. Photos with agricultural themes are framed in a way that gives the viewer a vision that the production is growing endlessly or that a portrayed machine is tremendously big.

The three main chapters of the book have headings giving signs of development and power: the liberation, the big achievements and the leading role of the working class. The texts demonstrate how the communists show the way into new times; they document the high level of the GDR-industry and encourage the young readers to act for the country. Questions accompanying the enthusiastic illustrations and plain text are for instance:
Nenne Beispiele aus deinem persönlichen Leben, in denen Errungenschaften des Sozialismus deutlich werden!
Zeige an Beispielen, wie sich Jugendliche in der Produktion bewähren!

Sometimes enthusiasm for the achievements in the little socialistic country turns to plain nationalism.

A final example is this first part of the third chapter:

Nimm eine Weltkarte zur Hand und zeige die DDR! Du hast Schwierigkeiten beim Finden? Ja, dieses kleine Land ist die DDR. Gemessen an der Größe des Territoriums steht die DDR an 92. Stelle, hinsichtlich der Anzahl der Einwohner an 38. Stelle. Hinsichtlich ihrer Wirtschaftskraft gehört die DDR aber zu den zehn bedeutendsten Industrieländern der Welt.

**Conclusion**

A striking feature *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* is the enthusiasm expressed for the own country. Literature about the praxis of communistic teaching shows the ideological roots for a presentation like this. For instance Schkolnik (1976) underlines the need for developing an emotionally positive attitude towards the communistic idea. Schkolnik also gives examples of enemification when describing school projects that have been used to show the benefits of socialism compared to “imperialism”. The same source underlines the need to use revolutionaries as role models. Socialism needs heroes. My conclusion is that *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* is written according to communistic ideological guidelines and that these also were identified in the categories revealed in my analysis.

In the introduction I presented two conceptions of textbooks. The first one, which was object of the criticism of textbook researchers, is claimed mainly to focus on objective descriptions of the society. If the role of the reader here is to encompass the information selected by the authors, a central trait in the other one would be the aim to activate the reader to think critically about the message presented. *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* does not fit in to either of these categories. A third type of textbooks, the manipulative or persuasive textbook, is discerned. Here the message is clearly subordinated to the manipulation of the state. The aim is to inform about the issues of the state and by involving the reader, for instance through the use of communistic jargon, to convince her/him about the benefits of the actual society. The division between the three types of textbooks is however not clear cut. Also in an informative textbook the choice of content, in what is taken in and in what is left out, leads to manipulation. An argumentative presentation cannot either be totally relative. The choice of information and problems always encompasses manipulation, though not so clear as in *Staatsbürgerkunde 7*.

The persuasion of *Staatsbürgerkunde 7* is hovering between a high perspective and a low perspective, the first one presenting for instance leaders of the party and of the socialist world at large. The dichotomy we – *them* is used consciously by the authors to convince the readers of the benefits of the East German interpretation of socialism.
Textbooks are written to influence the reader. The reader has however the ultimate decision of how to understand a text. My study does not give any final information about how the GDR-society really appeared to the readers. The extraordinary fast and peaceful reunion of the Western and Eastern parts of the country shows, despite of later “ostalgie”, that the manipulation was not as effective as the state had hoped for. One can only speculate on the actual effects of books like Staatsbürgerkunde 7.

I have identified some of the efforts to convince the young reader of the benefits of the own society in a communistic period of a European country.

In a song about the native country in Staatsbürgerkunde 7 there is a line telling that “the answer is found in the history book” and that in the country of “Einstein, Karl Marx and Bach” “each answer ends with a question mark”. Also in my analysis many questions remain to be answered. One is what elements from the enthusiastic presentation could be applied to textbooks trying to convince a reader about the benefits of democracy.

**References**

Åhlberg, Mauri. 1991. Concept mapping, concept matrices, link tables and argumentation analysis as techniques for educational research on textbooks and educational discourse and as tools for teachers and their pupils in their everyday work. In Julkunen, Marja-Lena; Selander, Staffan & Åhlberg, Mauri: Research on Texts at School. Joensuu: Joensuun yliopisto.


Research on how innovative Geography multimedia textbooks incorporate transdisciplinary global education ‘perspectives’

Susan Bliss


Global education, a growing global movement in Asia, Europe, Australia and the USA, is defined in the Maastricht Global Education Declaration (2002) as ‘education that opens people’s eyes and minds to the realities of the world, and awakens them to bring about a world of greater justice, equity and human rights for all’. In Australia educating for a global perspective, generally termed ‘global education’, is treated as a transdisciplinary subject that aims to integrate global knowledge and understandings, skills and processes and values and attitudes, within subject disciplines. It also aims to equip students with critical skills and supports a future focused, transformative, curriculum that contributes to an ‘educational paradigm which stresses unity and interdependence of human society, empowerment, social progress for all, a sustainable and just world and active participation’ (Curriculum Corporation 2002, 1).

As global education is new in Australia, Bliss the co-author of the geography textbooks Geoactives 1 (1998, 2005) and Geoactives 2 (2000, 2005), had the unique task of integrating global education within the geography curricula. Today this infusion has resulted in the publication of innovative, transdisciplinary textbooks that have captured the largest market share of geography textbooks in Australia. Also contributing to their market success has been the movement from a single textbook in the first editions to a multimedia package in the second editions that includes photocopiable worksheets, CD Rom, Internet links, e-flash cards and websheets. These diverse resources aim to raise students’ awareness and understanding of contemporary, contentious global issues, such as poverty, human rights abuses, social injustice, terrorism, refugees and environmental degradation, from a diversity of frequently conflicting perspectives.

Global and geographical perspectives

Humans possess a diversity of conflicting perspectives on global and geographical contentious issues such as human rights abuses in Guantanamo Bay and the war in Iraq. These issues require sensitive handling by textbook writers to ensure they receive balanced and critical appraisal (Curriculum Corporation, 2002, 20), as no single perspective has universal endorsement.
It is important for textbook writers to be aware of how knowledge about the world is organised and understood from different viewpoints as there are different ways of looking, thinking and writing about these things. The priority given in textbooks to thinking about different parts of the world in textbooks often reflects culturally dominant values, and determines how the world appears to the most powerful groups and nations. For example Europeans considered themselves at the world’s centre during the era of colonialism and Australian textbooks described the world as a series of empires. These views were supported by eurocentric textbooks that included map projections, such as the Mercator projection, that misrepresented the relative size of the continents. For example Europe and North America were exaggerated in comparison to Africa and Australia. Today other map projections referred to in Geoactives, such as the Peters and Macarthur projections, represents a different perspective on the world.

In the past, old geography textbooks reflected racism, ethnocentrism, sexism and paternalism (Marsden, 1989) and it was not until the late 1970s and 1980s that efforts were made to counter stereotyping. The political swing in the late 20th century towards social justice (human rights) and the empowerment of individuals (civics and citizenship) through collective action was supported by the growth of non-government organisations (NGO) and the production of a wide variety of curriculum material with a global education focus (Hicks and Fisher, 1985; Huckle, 1993; Pike and Selby, 1988). These textbooks with cross-curricular themes influenced geography teaching often embracing competing liberal, radical and utopian agendas. There was also increased attention to critical theory and the ideas of Jurgen Habermas (Gibson, 1986; Young, 1989).

Author as researcher

The textbook-driven education system defines knowledge, as textbooks are an integral part of most education systems and serve as bridges between teachers and students. Zevin (2000) stated that teachers depend on the textbook as their main source of ideas without much enrichment or supplementation from other sources. He also stated that they are used as part of a nearly closed system of assignments, reading, questions, homework and tests that provide security but little imagination. This is because of time-scarce teachers’ need for quick, easy, readily available material.

Obviously authors aim for reliability, validity, consistency and truth in textbooks as they serve as a vital resource for both students and teachers. But it must be noted that textbooks incorporate a condensed overview of a subject where bias, distortion and omission are unsolvable problems. Also authors’ views are subject to overview by the editor and publisher who together control the selection and presentation of content and images.

To overcome biased views and determine the so called ‘truth’ a variety of perspectives is essential so students understand that textbooks are written by people,
with their own agendas, interests and attitudes. Also researchers point out that content is subject to historical milieu reflecting national concerns and attitudes of the times (Yeager and Davis, 1996). For example in the past there was a reliance on a single source of information, such as a textbook. This led to the acceptance of biased perspectives with minority groups overlooked or poorly treated. To ensure teachers are aware of these problems they must look for inconsistencies and bias in texts. They can do this by recognising fallacious reasoning or unsupported viewpoints, so students can make ‘better judgments, draw more reasoned conclusions, read more carefully, and understand why questions must often remain open or unanswerable’ (Zevin, 2000, 322).

The problem with an over reliance on textbooks is that authors can consciously or unconsciously incorporate bias both for what is written and for what is omitted. Textbooks also have mistakes but ethical writers have a responsibility to the students to tell the truth. Garvy (1995), in *The Earth is Flat: My Textbook Says So*, states that teachers may fall into the same problem expressed in a Peanuts comic strip. Here Lucy held forth with great authority that the palm tree was named because ‘the palm of the ordinary human hand could fit snugly around the trunk of the tree’. Today with increasing links in the *Geoactives* to primary and secondary sources, such as the Internet, these mistakes can hopefully be minimised.

A key underlying assumption of the qualitative research paradigm is the subjective nature of the researcher’s role. In terms of personal factors, Denzin and Lincoln (1994, 12) note that the researcher’s ‘gaze’ is always ‘filtered through the lenses of language, gender, social class, race and ethnicity. There are no objective observations, only observations socially situated in the worlds of the observer and the observed’. As suggested by Bogdan and Biklen (1998, 34) and Janesick (1994, 212), it is the responsibility of qualitative researchers to locate themselves in terms of their subjectivity and positioning. Obviously this author’s background and the perspectives it engenders have impacted on her writing and this research.

**Research A: University student teachers**

Little research exists on textbooks. The problem is the hybridity of the subject-matter and that literature crosses national, disciplinary and methodological boundaries. One of the few authors on textbook research is Johnsen (1993) who noted that textbook research has sprung from a concern with racial and nationalist stereotypes. He noted that the problem is that books have been studied as repositories of attitudes and that research into textbooks covers a vast field, from textual authority, through syntax to ‘meta discourse’ and illustrations. He deals with the development of textbooks and the relation of texts to curricula and teaching. His work was an important source of information for the author as exposure to alternative ways of knowing and interpretation is essential in global and geographical education. Also considered were the inherently subjective nature of academic inquiry and the importance of exposure to competing perspectives.
Also, limited research has been conducted on how teachers use textbooks in teaching and learning. Most have studied textbook content (Zahorik, 1991) while Horsley and Laws (1990) developed an observational instrument, TEXTOR (2005), to examine textbook use in teaching and learning in secondary social science classrooms. Their model was applied to Bliss’s research on Geoactives.

Bliss conducted research on fifty students studying geography with a global education perspective in their final year of their Master of Teaching, Bachelor of Education or Diploma of Education course at the University of Sydney (30 students - 2004) and Macquarie University (20 students - 2005). These students completed a simple, open ended questionnaire on the use of Geoactives during their practicum in public and private schools in New South Wales. Bliss’s aim, as researcher of her published textbooks, was to reflect on students responses to a questionnaire so as to improve future editions (Question 4) and its use in teaching and learning (Questions 3, 6). It was important from a perspectives focus to find out whether substantive knowledge contained in these textbooks was supported by a diversity of other resources (Question 2). Also to be considered from a marketing aspect was the availability of textbooks and their use in lessons (Question 5).

The following six open ended questions were given to students with an option for comments:

1. Did you use Geoactives during your practicum? If not, which books?
2. Did you support your lessons with other resources?
3. When did you use Geoactives?
4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of Geoactives?
5. What are the textbook problems in schools?
6. While observing teachers during your practicum, describe their use of textbooks.

Student’s feedback from the first question noted that 80% used Geoactives in the classroom. (This high percentage should be viewed in the context that the author of Geoactives was also the respondents’ lecturer). The other 19% referred to the excellent textbooks by Kleeman (Heinemann), a notable author and leader in geographical education and only 1% to the Macmillan publication. Unfortunately, the answer to the second question found only 42% used other texts for balanced, comparative analysis. Results from research on the third question found 62% used Geoactives for class discussion; 44% as an alternative to teacher talk; 72% for student activities. Advantages listed in the fourth question included: 82% liked the double page concept; 76% found the Internet sites as an invaluable resource but had difficulty accessing computers during lessons; 90% valued the integration of geographical tools, saving the purchase of an extra book; 62% favoured suggestions for group work and empathy exercises; 85% used it for homework but only 70% regularly. The disadvantages stated included: 22% of respondents that some concepts are too difficult, especially for ESL (English as a Second Language) students, and 15% that the double page concept increased breadth at the expense of depth. This lighter coverage of many topics in fact reflected changes to the curricula
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook

(Board of Studies, 2003), and was supported by the editor who restricted the size of texts, limiting subject depth. To overcome the problem texts included links to the Internet and via a teaching program, other relevant resources.

The fifth question opened up Pandora’s Box as most respondents stated that they were concerned about lack of textbooks in most public schools. Reasons given included inadequate funding in public schools leading to unequal provision of textbooks and priority given to senior classes. They also found more Mathematics, English and Science classes had textbooks than junior geography (years 7-10) classes, despite the mandatory external School Certificate Test in Geography, History and Civics and Citizenship at the end of year 10. These school students generally shared books and were unable to take them home. Some books were battered and disfigured with graffiti. Learning time was wasted on handing out and collecting textbooks. This was in contrast to the wealthier private and selective, public schools where students’ parents generally purchased the textbooks from a variety of publishers, enabling a broader perspective of the course. Also these students were more fortunate as most had access to the Internet and other resources such as videos, compared to most students attending socio-economically disadvantaged public schools. These findings supported by Laws and Horsley’s (1992) study on Educational Equity between 1987 and 1990 which found students in non-government schools had access to six times more text resources in the classroom than students in government schools.

Respondents also noted that inadequate textbook resources meant students used libraries. Again an equity issue arose as better supplied libraries were supported by wealthier parent associations financed by the ‘Old Boys’ private schools network. Some respondents mentioned that the Internet had become an increasing source of global geographical knowledge but that there was a digital divide between those who had access to computers and those who could not afford them. In some private schools each student had his or her own laptop for every geography lesson and could follow Internet activities in Geoactives. In contrast other schools, with few computers, limited the students’ use of information and communications technology (ICT). Obviously these are some equity issues in New South Wales schools that need to be addressed at the beginning of the 21st century, for improved student global learning and understanding.

University students’ response to the sixth question noted that most teachers (95%) adhered closely to a geography textbook that followed the curricula as it provided structure for the course. However the way teachers used the textbooks varied with the amount of teaching experience (less experienced greater use) and degree of geography training (less training greater use). Clearly, a variable to be considered is whether teachers are self motivated to provide different perspectives and activities that engage the curiosity and interests of mixed ability classes. All teachers used a textbook but acknowledged that a single textbook did not adequately cover all aspects of the geography course. With the implementation of the new syllabus in 2005, even experienced geography teachers relied on textbooks to structure their
lessons. Hopefully with experience and confidence this dependence will decrease allowing expanded perspectives and achieving more balanced, substantive knowledge.

Respondents also noted that 81% of teachers rearranged the materials in the textbooks, to construct knowledge for themselves and students. A few older teachers in private schools, who had a traditional training in ‘chalk and talk’ teaching methodologies, used the books didactically, as students worked methodically through each page of Geoactives. After reading the texts the students completed the set activities at the end of each topic, for homework. The teachers followed the program designed by Bliss, on the web, with no alterations to accommodate student’s interests and abilities. This teaching style ensured students were able to absorb and recall information in tests. Unfortunately there was little analysis and critical examination of information from a diversity of perspectives. The acquisition of predigested information, with no other source of information, ensured students’ perspectives and understandings of topics were limited.

Despite what curriculum developers and teacher educators think about textbooks most students and their parents think they are important. Parents refer to textbooks to provide assistance when students have been sick or absent from school; if they performed poorly in an exam; to supervise their homework; as well as a check on the teacher, especially in selective public and private schools. This dependence on a textbook was reinforced by Laws and Horsley (1990) who noted that the absence of a textbook could diminish the value of a subject in the eyes of students and their parents.

Research B: Geography teachers

The second research conducted by Bliss in 2004 was on twenty experienced geography teachers who were members of the Geography Teachers’ Association of New South Wales (GTANSW). These teachers were given five questions with an option for comments:

1. What textbook did you select for the Stage 4/5 geography course?
2. Do you support your lessons with other resources?
3. When do you rely on a textbook?
4. What are the textbook issues in your school?
5. If you selected Geoactives, what were the reasons?

Responses:

1. All stated that they had selected a geography textbook for their students. Ninety percent had selected Geoactives.
2. All said they also used a diversity of other resources.
3. Most relied on the textbook when they were busy (80%), for homework (90%) or when they were absent (95%). Most stated it was easier for casual inexperienced teachers to follow the texts when taking over their lessons, especially in the middle of a topic.
4. Ten percent noted that parents complained that textbooks were rarely used making it hard to justify their expense. This comment came from experienced teachers who only used a text as a guide. Others stated that their school ‘could not afford textbooks for all students and were using outdated resources’ (5%). This had an ‘adverse impact on student’s external results’ (5%). A few stated that the ‘quality of education is threatened because of lack of textbooks’ and ‘textbooks are a security blanket for an increasing number of untrained geography teachers’. Most agreed that there was a ‘need for a wide range of resources to provide breadth of coverage to meet the range of abilities and interests in mixed ability classes’ and the ‘Internet the future textbook’. All teachers mentioned the limitations of textbooks from a teaching-learning perspective and some cited language difficulties as many students have learning disabilities and English problems. A few teachers had misgivings because they purchased the first text to be released after the launch of the new syllabus. These texts ‘did not adequately cover the course’. Others advocated that they trialled different texts after the release of a new curricula, as a ‘stop gap’, until they had time to examine the texts in greater detail. A wise educational decision.

5. Bliss found similar results to Lambert (1996) who surveyed teachers in their selection of geography books in the United Kingdom. For example most teachers stated that their selection of the new revised editions of Geoactives was based on previous merits of the first editions. Other responses included: followed revised syllabus outcomes and content; presentation was colourful and easy to follow; writing at a good literacy level; variety of relevant case studies; included challenging tasks for the more able students; issues were topical; key concepts and themes clearly signposted; excellent quality of photographs and graphics; contents well organised and clearly expressed; sensitive and balanced handling of contentious issues; and good quality of writing that was relevant and accurate. Most loved the ‘double page’ concept linked to each lesson that reduced preparation time. Most teachers were pleased with its emphasis on the School Certificate with more pages allocated to the examinable Focus Areas 5A3 and 5A4. They were also reassured of its credibility as the writer had a record of students achieving first place in the Higher School Certificate in geography and provided professional development for teachers. Most understood that a textbook has difficulties serving all ability levels, all teachers’ needs and all students’ interests. Most teachers used a range of criteria derived from their own pedagogical content knowledge in evaluating the recently published Geoactives. The majority indicated that the texts had adequately encompassed curricula change and the new global and geographical education focus.

Thirty years ago a single geography textbook dominated each lesson. No longer do textbooks form the total structure of a course of study. Instead they are viewed as one of the numerous resources available to students. This change is supported in
Geography Years 7-10 Syllabuses (1998, 2003) requirements that ‘teachers should make reference to a variety of information sources, including professional journals, television documentaries, a variety of newspapers and magazines, CD-ROMs, the Internet, databases, library information services, government departments and non-government agencies’ (Board of Studies, 2003, 17).

**Conclusion**

Today there is increasing global controversy based on content, values and perspectives in textbooks. According to the newsletter from the American Library Association’s Office for Intellectual Freedom’s (OIF) there are endless disputes involving geography and global education topics such as, environmentalism, politics and portrayals of women and minority groups. But ideological challenges to instructional materials are not new with supporters for the status quo conflicting with protesters, pressing for greater inclusion of nontraditional perspectives. As countries become more multicultural the perspectives of the eurocentric dominant culture are questioned with protests against viewpoints in textbooks leading to the establishment of new rules to govern the selection of curricula material. A new orthodoxy then evolves leading to protests between ‘traditionalists who liked the books the way they were’ and ‘progressives who do not believe that the changes have gone far enough’ (Department of English University of Delaware, 2005).

With a plethora of books, films and primary and secondary source materials available from libraries and on the Internet, textbooks should be used as a supplement in the classroom to achieve a diversity of perspectives. Educators are aware that textbooks have a key place in teaching and learning and wonder if the narrow perspectives in textbooks is yesterday’s technology for yesterday’s schools or if textbooks will continue to evolve particularly in the context of the wider resource environment including the digital information explosion. As we look into the future will the heavy geography textbook be replaced by a new, light, small, current ‘textbook on a CD-ROM’, promoting a diversity of global perspectives?

**References**


Department of English University of Delaware accessed at
http://www.english.udel.edu/jdel/textbooks.html, March 5, 2005
Huckle, J. 1993. What We Consume. The Teachers’ handbook, Richmond: WWF/Richmond
Geography in Aspects of Teaching Secondary Geography: Perspectives on Practice.
London: Routledge.
Johnsen, E. 1993. Textbooks in the Kaleidoscope. A Critical Survey of Literature and
Departments: Some Answers and Some Further Questions for Research Paradigm No. 21,
December Education, Environment and Economy Group, University of London Institute
Secondary Schools. Sydney, Centre for Research on Textbooks.
http://www.globaleducation.ch/english/pagesnav/frames.htm February 13 2005
Marsden, W. 1989. All in a good geography, history and the politicisation of the curriculum
in the 19th and 20th century England. Journal of Curriculum Studies, 21(6), 509-526
Queensland: John Wiley and Sons.
Yeager, E., & Davis, O. 1996. Classroom Teachers’ Thinking About Historical Texts: An
Exploratory Study, 24 no. 2, Spring, 146-166
Zahorik, J. 1991. Teaching style and textbooks. Teaching and Teacher Education, 7, 2, 185-
196.
Zevin J; 2000. Social Studies for the Twenty-First Century: Methods and Materials for
The purpose of this paper is to discuss the interesting process of transforming a work of literature into film. What happens when narratives expressed through the written word are to be told in a language of sound and moving pictures? And, most important in this context, to what extent are literary film adaptations useful as educational texts?

**Literature becomes film**

*Lord of the Rings, City of God, Chocolat, La Pianiste, Girl With a Pearl Earring, The Constant Gardener, Brokeback Mountain* – these are well-known film titles from the past years. They have one thing in common: All of them have literary sources, they are film adaptations of novels or short-stories.

Adaptation is not a new phenomenon at all. Intertextual studies show that stories always seem to derive from other stories. Even the ancient Greek playwrights, like Sophocles and Euripides, based their plays in most cases on myths and stories that had already been told. The British scholar Christopher Booker recently published a very thorough piece of research in which he showed, and in fact proved, that most stories of the world – from myths and fairy-tales, novels and plays to Hollywood films and TV soap operas can structurally and thematically be reduced to “seven basic plots” – which is also the title of his study (Booker, 2004).

But the adaptation proper, when a specific work of literature is retold in a multimodal medium – a film, or perhaps a video game – is a relatively modern feature. My studies of film adaptations in Norway show that between 40 and 50 per cent of all full length fiction films have direct literary sources – the number depending on whether to include an already performative and multimodal genre as the theatre play, or – as I prefer – to concentrate on literary epic sources, like novels and short-stories. The hunt for literary narratives to base a film on seems to increase for each year. In Norway, as in most other film producing countries of the Western world, film makers race to buy options of any new novel that seems to have adaptation possibilities.

**Three major reasons for adaptation**

Why, then, do movie makers to such an extent search their book-shelves for material? There are at least three obvious reasons to be mentioned:

First, there is the bestseller argument. Film making is an expensive and very risky business. To base one’s film on an already well-known bestselling book is a guarantee that the adaptation will benefit from this and attract numerous readers. Even if the film turns out to be a disappointment, it will still avoid becoming a disastrous financial flop.
Secondly, there is the prestige involved in the film’s close relationship to literature, especially literature by authors of high standing. Nearly from the very beginning of film history, the young medium tried to get away from the label of light and superficial entertainment by making alliances with the far more respectable medium of the written word. In Norway, one of the first real successes on the silver screen was a Swedish film adaptation from 1916 of Henrik Ibsen’s epic poem *Terje Vigen*. Two of the first Norwegian full-length movies from the beginning of the 1920s were based on novels by Knut Hamsun – *Growth of the Soil (Markens grøde)* (1921) and *Pan* (1922).

Last, but not least: One major reason why films are based on books is simply that the best story often is to be found between the covers of a novel. In spite of numerous classes and courses and a vast production of manuals and handbooks in screenplay writing, there are still far too few top quality screenplays originally written for film. The film industry will most probably have to depend on novels and short-stories in times to come. For those among us who work with the book-into-film process in educational contexts, this is a very comforting fact. It means that also in the future there will be produced a lot of useful material for adaptation studies.

In addition, the development of several theories of literature and the media through the past decades seems to have created a positive climate, as it were, for adaptation studies. By this I refer to theories and methods that do not involve any hidden and implied concepts of a hierarchy between different genres and media, and I shall mention some of them in a moment. To adaptation studies, it is of vital importance that the two discourses, the novel and the film, can be compared on equal terms of quality, regardless of their semiotically different ways of expression.

**Logophilia and film scepticism**

A joke attributed to Alfred Hitchcock, who was renowned for turning mediocre novels into film masterpieces, tells about two donkeys eating scrapped film reels in the backyard of a Hollywood film production company. “Is it any good?” one donkey asks the other, who is in the process of eating a film. “Yes”, the gobbling donkey answers, “but the book was much better!” The deeper meaning of this joke is probably that only a donkey would claim an adaptation’s loyalty to its literary source in such a way.

In some academic circles, though, one can still observe, after more than a 100 years of film art, an attitude to the film medium as being inferior in itself to the written word. One could with film theorist Robert Stam speak of a certain logophilia, and an often corresponding iconophobia (Stam, 2005).

This involves a notion, perhaps derived from the inevitably physical nature of the film, that it is unable to transform the telling modus of the book successfully into the showing modus of the moving pictures, that the thoughts and the conceptual nature of the novel is simply not transformable into film action and dialogue. This is all the more surprising since the same persons would not dream of hinting at such
limitations when speaking about the theatrical stage and the range of expression available for playwrights: Shakespeare, say, or Ibsen.

Most certainly there exists also still a certain kind of social class distinction associated with the book and the film respectively, the first having as it were a certain bouquet of good wine associated with it, the second, however, a rather distinct smell of popcorn.

But the main reason for scepticism is perhaps that the film is still the younger medium, and although it has been the dominant narrative medium for the past decades, it is still suffering from an inferior complex towards the book, the dominant narrative medium of centuries before. One is reminded of Socrates and his scepticism and fear facing the new medium of his life and times – the written word. What would happen to people’s heads and their ability to memorize, Socrates asked, when thoughts from now on could be expressed and preserved in writing? He had a point, of course. On the other hand the written word and the book as a medium certainly soon compensated for the reduction it imposed on oral culture. Perhaps we can look at the relationship between book and film in much the same way: the written word is certainly unbeatable in many respects, but the film undoubtedly has its means of compensating. Thus, we should treat them not as rivals or each other’s parasites, but as forms of expression that may complement each other, for example in the case of literary film adaptation.

**Theories in favour of adaptation studies**

Luckily, the tolerant view expressed above, is supported, directly or indirectly, by several recent theories and methods.

- Narratology, to mention one, describes the nature and the elements of a narrative – regardless of its form of expression being verbal, visual or multimodal.
- Intertextual studies have showed us that even the seemingly original story has its precursors, a fact that somehow reduces the absolute authority of the source text in an adaptation process.
- Interart and intermedia studies search for the equivalents of expression across the different arts and across the media. The research into correspondences between the specific languages of novel and film is a natural part of such cultural studies.
- Reception theories – reader-response and viewer-response – maintain that there is no standard, no ideal interpretation of any text or any artefact. Following this view, the often heard accusation against a film adaptation for not being true to or loyal to the book it is based on, falls to the ground. Besides, a critic’s claim for such a loyalty or fidelity to the source novel, in most cases seems to be about the fidelity to the critic’s own interpretation of the book.
Summing it up so far: Literary science in many ways encourages the relevance and the importance of adaptation studies. We have also seen that there is no shortage of material for those who want to work within this field. Two major questions remain for me to discuss: Why should we study film adaptations in school? And how could we do it, using what method or study model?

**Why study film adaptations in class?**

The study of film, its specific language and specific codes, is in itself important, not only to our pupils and students, but also to ourselves. We are all great consumers of moving pictures, but learning to read films is another matter than just consuming them. The study of the adaptation process from novel to film in addition offers an insight into the nature of expression through words and through pictures, respectively. In what contexts do the seducing powers and the suggestiveness of the film really unfold? And when is one word capable of saying more than a thousand pictures?

Another very good reason for novels-into-film studies in school is that such studies clearly stimulate the interest for literature, for reading. Through my own teaching I experience this, and there are numerous examples of film adaptations causing a demand for the books they are based on. Frequently, old and little known novels experience a revival. After successful Norwegian film adaptations, long forgotten novels like Knut Hamsuns *Sværmere* and Bjørnstjerne Bjørnsons *Fiskerjenten* have been reprinted, published in paperback with pictures from the film on their covers and sold in newsstands along with magazines, papers and comic books. Even an author with a more limited accessibility, like Virginia Woolf, gained a considerably enlarged circle of readers after the adaptation of her own *Mrs. Dalloway* (1997) and of Michael Cunningham's *The Hours* (2002).

There is also the new phenomenon of novelization. When Charles Dickens’ *Great Expectations* was filmed for the last time so far in 1998, lots of people wanted, as usual, to read the book on which the film based itself. For a number of inexperienced young readers, however, Dickens’ original was too much of a challenge. Instead they chose to read a light version of the story, based on the film screenplay – a so called novelization. Naturally, this is a controversial type of novel, but some people maintain that sometimes it is a good thing that young people read books at all, and that a light version is far better than no version. In any case, the reading of the novel is stimulated by the film adaptation.

**Novels into film. A model for classroom work**

There are undoubtedly a lot of ways to work with film adaptations in an educational setting. I have made a model that I follow more or less in my own teaching, and that very often leads to interesting discussions in class. I will finish this introduction to the subject by giving a brief outline of this model. It consists of four steps after we have read the novel and seen the film adaptation of it.
First, we concentrate on comparing the two discourses on a strictly narrative level. This direct comparison is possible because the film manuscript basically is comparable to literary genres. The synopsis and the treatment, for example, that represent stages towards the screenplay, are in fact very much like the short-story. In this part of the process we try to answer questions like: What has been kept of the novel’s narrative? What has been reduced – and why? What has been changed from novel to film narrative? What has been added – and why?

Secondly, we study the apparent results of the transformation from verbal to visual representation, from telling to showing. What happens when words become flesh, so to speak? Do we get a different impression of the characters of the plot and the relationship between them when we can watch the situations for ourselves, than, for example, when we are forced to rely on the novel’s first person narrator?

Thirdly, perhaps the most interesting part of the analysis: Has the film adaptation tried to develop film equivalents to elements in the novel that are not directly transferable? What has for example happened to the interior monologues, to the shifting point of view of the novel, to the poetic language of the book? Has the film used some of its specific elements like music, light, colour, camera movements, film editing to compensate or perhaps even to create new aspects?

Finally we collect all our observations in an overview of the film’s main theme or themes compared with the novel’s. How has the film in question interpreted the novel? What may be the reasons for this choice? Has it perhaps to do with a modern reading of an old story? Has gender anything to do with it – female author, male director, for example?

Film and television and the part they play in our lives, not least in the lives of our pupils and students, represent big changes in the learning environment. Naturally, this must have consequences for the textbooks and the educational media that are produced now and in the future. Through this brief presentation of literary adaptation work in education, I have suggested a method which deals with not alone the modern multimodal texts, but also offers a possibility of building bridges between the traditional and the modern, between literature and film.

References


Designing a Textbook for Effective Learning in Developing Countries
Micheline Ravelonanahary

Introduction
In this paper I would like to appeal to textbook writers to consider problems specific to developing countries when they design textbooks. As an English teacher-trainer for primary and secondary schools, I am interested in textbooks for the teaching of English, although it may be that some of the suggestions raised in this paper could be applied to the teaching of other school subjects.

Many excellent resources have been written for EFL teachers but most of them have been written for schools in the industrialised world because this is where the money is. As a result, they are designed for a teaching environment where certain facilities are normally available, such as photocopying and cassette players, where teachers are well trained and have a reasonable level of English, and where it is assumed that money is available to provide the students with books.

As I will describe in the first part of this paper, this is very different from the everyday reality that teachers face in developing countries, with the result that even those books supposedly aimed at poorer countries are at best of limited use and therefore ineffective.

The emphasis is then how to make textbooks accessible to all learners. In the second part of this paper I will outline some ideas which I and my colleagues in Madagascar have developed which I feel would help to meet some of these challenges.

Part I: Problems of ELT in Developing Countries

ELT in Malagasy classrooms – general constraints

Madagascar is the world's fourth largest island. It is two and a half times the size of Great Britain with a population of about 15 million. It should be noted that this makes Madagascar relatively small compared to many other developing countries, such as the Sudan which is the size of Western Europe.

What my country has in common with many other developing countries is extremely poor infrastructure. There are six provinces linked by national roads from the capital city Antananarivo. However, communication within regions is extremely difficult, with some areas about the size of Normandy having no vehicular access at all. Eighty per cent of the population lives several hours or even several days walk from the nearest road. Access to clean drinking water is a luxury even in the towns and it goes without saying that most of the rural population is not connected to electricity.
Malnutrition and diseases such as malaria are a serious problem and child mortality in some areas can reach 40%.

Concerning education, primary education is compulsory in theory (new figures show 87% attendance) and free of charge in state schools. However, the reality is that the government budget for education is so small that many teachers even at secondary level are recruited and paid by the parents, sometimes with sacks of rice.

Investment for teacher training is so limited that many teachers have received no training at all and those that are qualified receive no follow-up because there is no regular budget allocated to training. As a regional teacher trainer myself, I have not been able to work with any teachers outside the capital city for the last two years.

Teachers of English in Madagascar as in other developing countries face the problem of insufficient or non-existent textbooks, the problem of trying to work from out-dated books or materials that require modern equipment. Many EFL books include activities on cassettes or CDs and as I mentioned, most of the country is not connected to electricity and even when schools do have power they certainly do not have the money to buy cassettes players.

The only equipment available in the classrooms is a blackboard. Students are lucky if they have a book to use because the government simply cannot afford to buy enough copies. Even when available the textbooks are inappropriate to the learning environment because the teachers do not have the professional competency to use them properly. In such a limited resource situation and because of their lack of confidence and training, teachers are tempted to fall back on teacher-centred "Chalk and talk" lessons which is common in a traditional classroom because this is how they were taught themselves.

The lack of teachers leads to other problems. The most obvious is very large classes: teachers can expect to have a minimum of fifty students in one class, and in some cases up to 150 or more, with the resulting overcrowding. However, a less obvious problem is the wide range of ages in one class, with 11-year-olds studying with 18-year-olds because children start secondary school at very different ages depending on the resources available in their area.

Lastly, it should be remembered that the classroom is generally the only place the students get to hear or use English: there are no English language newspapers or television, films are dubbed into French, and the BBC and Voice of America are only available in the capital.

**Students**

Students generally start to learn English in secondary school, usually from the age of 11, although it is now being introduced in the last two years of primary school. English is a compulsory subject in secondary school but it is still optional at the national exams.
Students have a strong personal motivation to learn English and they like innovation. Many children in fact look forward to going to secondary school because they know they will start English lessons there. Unfortunately, despite the objective of the syllabus which is to make students able to express themselves in real situations, the majority of them can hardly hold a simple conversation in English after seven years of study.

They could do better but the lack of textbooks and the teacher-centred teaching style discourages them. In rural areas conditions are worse. Classrooms are more crowded so students literally cannot move and teachers cannot monitor them. This further discourages teachers from doing any communicative activities. Instead, the students typically respond to closed questions. In many cases, they are used to teachers who use drills and choral repetition as a means of teaching large classes. These techniques are good to keep students busy but their effectiveness as a learning tool is limited because of the lack of interaction. Consequently, the students get bored and lose concentration when they have nothing to use (this is made worse by the fact that many children suffer from malnutrition). Because of the lack of books many one-hour lessons consist only of the teacher writing a text onto the blackboard and the students copying it into their notebooks. Even when they do have books, these are only available to the students while they are in class and so they cannot use them to do any exercises or reading for homework. Furthermore, there is no school library to support their learning.

The situation is worse when the topics covered are dealt with from a western point of view which the students are not familiar with. Often they simply cannot understand texts and vocabulary because they have no visual supports, but also when they do they feel frustrated because the books present a world which they simply do not have access to, particularly for students in isolated rural areas.

Teachers

The current government has announced that English will be an official language and is taking measures to have English taught in every primary and secondary school. Those of us who work with teachers realise that there are considerable obstacles to this plan. Probably the biggest of these is the issue of teachers.

It is impossible to say for sure exactly how many English teachers there are in state schools in Madagascar. Firstly, many teachers of other subjects, such as Geography and History, are told by their directors that they have to teach English despite the fact that they are untrained, have never taught a language before, and may not even be able to speak English themselves. Some ‘English’ teachers at secondary level are unable to count to ten and pronunciation is particularly a problem: some teachers think that “one” is pronounced /on/ or that “take” is pronounced /tAe/.

Secondly, as mentioned before, many teachers are recruited and paid by the parents. The government is currently taking steps to train these teachers and 300 are at the
moment following a six-week course in the capital. But again, the problem is that the vast majority of them cannot speak English at all.

Those teachers who can speak English and who do receive training are taught a great deal of theory but are not given the kind of practical skills that would enable them to deal with the limited resources available in almost all schools. They do not know how to adapt supplementary materials to make them usable for large classes; they are not able to adapt a course book to suit their learner's needs; many teachers think that asking three students out of a class of eighty to come to the front and act out a dialogue means that they have done group work and given their students speaking practice.

Not only is initial training limited but there is very little follow up training from the Ministry of Education. I myself was never once observed during my 15 years as a teacher, nor did I ever get the opportunity to observe anyone else.

In remote areas, teachers are even more professionally isolated: they may have no resources at all and have no contact not only with trainers but even with colleagues. In some very remote areas, teachers have to take one week off work every month just to go to the nearest town to collect their salary.

**Materials**

The two textbooks chosen by the Ministry of Education to be used in secondary schools are *Go For English* by Ken Cripwell et al for lower secondary level (CEG) and the first three books of *The New Cambridge English Course* by Michael Swan and Catherine Walter for upper secondary level (Lycee).

*Go For English* is a course for African children and therefore for developing countries and was chosen because the context was considered to be closer to the Malagasy reality. However, feedback from teachers has shown that they have problems using the book.

The input texts exploit the learner’s previous knowledge, what they know in the African world. Many teachers do not have the time or skills to adapt the materials. They have also commented that they have difficulty understanding the instructions given in the book because even teachers with upper intermediate English do not have the language proficiency or the methodological repertoire to execute the directions given in the teacher's book (if they have one), for example the introduction suggests using modified cloze passages. This indicates to me that the writers of the book have no awareness of the limited knowledge of the teachers who are expected to use their book.

Although the book has been designed for Africa, it follows the same design as books for a western audience. This means that pronunciation is not dealt with at all, I presume because it is assumed that this can only be taught with a cassette.

Lastly, there is no indication of how many hours of classroom contact each book is supposed to cover. The level of difficulty in the language content of each book
accelerates so fast that I almost suspect that it was originally designed for English-speaking African countries as some reading passages for 4th (grade 8) are more suitable for native speaker children than for learners of a foreign language whose total exposure to English may come to no more than 100 hours.

Teachers also face problems with the New Cambridge English Course. Its western design and sophisticated materials make teachers and learners frustrated. Because of the problems at CEG level, teachers find that even the beginner book is too difficult for the students in the 10th grade.

Because it is designed for Western countries it is assumed that teachers have been trained in the communicative approach, and that they have modern equipment available. The content is also a problem. Topics describe how people live in the western world… which is very different from the students' environment. Although it is good for students to learn about life in other countries and alternative cultures and traditions to improve their knowledge as this is part of language learning, these books assume the students already have this knowledge because a Western lifestyle is “normal”.

So texts need to be culturally accessible, particularly as the teachers do not know how to adapt a text which talks about life in the western world. For example, texts which talk about choosing where to go on holiday in the US are completely unusable in a country where many people cannot afford to travel to the nearest town and whose only experience of tourism consists of seeing wealthy foreigners. This problem is not limited to NCEC so even if teachers try to use other materials, they still describe children having cornflakes for breakfast, and putting on their boots on rainy days and so on. In many cases, especially in rural areas, children do not have breakfast and many of them do not own shoes. Even if teachers can transfer these lessons into a cultural context that students can understand, it is an additional barrier for the students to overcome. Their reaction to something outside their interest area will be that of closing the books if they have one or they just do not listen.

Books designed for language schools also tend to assume that students will be given workbooks or photocopied exercises to provide them with enough homework practice, or that they will have access to libraries or bookshops where they can get grammar and vocabulary practice books. Obviously this is not the case in Madagascar.

In schools with good resources, teachers will often have access to supplementary activity books, such as the Cambridge Handbooks for Language Teachers or to the many books of photocopiable games that have been published. It is in these books that one can often find the most innovative activities, many of which do not require materials. Indeed, Lessons From Nothing by Bruce Marsland is specifically aimed at teachers working with limited resources. Unfortunately the book costs more than a primary school teacher earns in a month. Some of these books are available at the Teachers' Resource Centres, set up in 1990 with the help of the British Council, with materials donated by Embassies or by individuals. However, there are only six in the
whole country (in the capital of each of the regions), and they receive no
government funding but are financed by teachers paying a membership fee. This
means that the range of materials varies and is often inadequate. Furthermore, the
centre can only provide support for teachers working in or near the regional capitals
so those most in need of help are the ones who do not receive it, which only makes
the division between rural and urban education worse.

Part II: An Alternative Approach to Textbook Design

As I have shown, teachers in developing countries face enormous challenges which
course book designers must take into account if effective learning is to take place. In
this section I will take each point and propose suggestions for how these obstacles
could be overcome or at least lessened.

1. **There is no point designing a course book if the government cannot afford to buy it**

   The biggest expense is providing student books. This means the student book must
   be **AS CHEAP AS POSSIBLE**. Glossy paper, colour printing and photographs may make
   the book more enjoyable to use but they are a luxury we simply cannot afford. But
   what really increases the price of a book is the number of pages. We need books
   which are as small as possible. Although the page layout needs to be clear and easy
to read, we do not have the money to pay for pages which have only a few words on
them, or a large picture when a smaller one would do.

   The general layout of student books has changes remarkably little in the last 50
   years. It has always been assumed that all activities done in class must appear in the
   student book, even if they only consist of a list of 10 words which can easily be
   written on the board. Writers also assume that all instructions must appear in the
   book, such as *Listen and answer the questions*. Teachers always have to give
   instructions anyway, and this gives the students important listening practice. By
   cutting out all unnecessary text and all instructions except those for homework
   exercises, course book size could be reduced by as much as 80%.

   I am suggesting that designers imagine that they are teaching large classes with no
   textbooks and only limited photocopying for handouts. What would they write on
   the board? What would they put on the handouts? Obviously with reading texts, long
   exercises and homework, students need their own copies because it takes too long to
   copy off the board or because they need it at home. These things, and **only** these
   things, should be put in the student book. Everything else should go in the teacher's
   book.

2. **The content needs to be relevant to developing countries all over the world**

   In the west, public transport may consist usually of trains, large buses, metros, etc.
   In developing countries it often consists of rickshaws, mini-vans, bullock carts and
   so on. Some teachers may feel that it is only appropriate to teach transport which the
students are familiar with, and the teacher's book should give them that option, but if students are going to learn about life in other countries, why does the emphasis have to be on rich countries which the students cannot relate to? A student in a village in Madagascar could more easily relate to the concept of going to work by rickshaw than they could to the idea of a metro.

Writers also need to be careful about geographical differences. This is not technically a developed/developing difference, although it often is in practice, but a north/south difference. In Madagascar, and in Australia, July and August are not the summer but the winter. « Grandes vacances » is usually translated as “summer holidays” and yet for us the reality is different. Similarly, a south-facing house is dark and cold, while a north-facing house is sunny. Even something as basic as learning the four seasons is not universal. In south-east Asia there are three seasons: a rainy season, a hot dry season and a hot humid season.

Although Go For English tries to address these problems, by referring only to African cultures it excludes everyone else, whereas if it referred to Cameroon and India and Equator for example, no one would feel excluded, students would learn about other parts of the world, and it would make the book more economically feasible to publish because it could be sold in more countries.

3. There is no point giving teachers pedagogical advice and instructions if they cannot understand them

This means that the teacher's book must be written in a very simple language. It might even be an idea, now that publishers and Ministries of Education have access to computers, to sell the teacher's book on CD so that the government can have it translated into the local language and then have it printed locally. This would also cut down on shipping costs.

4. Books that are designed for a specific academic year do not correspond to the students' level of English

Secondary school course books have traditionally been designed for a specific academic year because they need to appeal to a specific age group. So a book in the 6th grade would be for 11-12 year-olds and a book in the 9th grade would be for 15-16 year-olds. However, in developing countries classes may in any case have students of very different ages. What concerns teachers is that the book should correspond to the level of the students rather than the age group. The level of a student in their second year of English will vary greatly in different countries depending, for example, on whether they use a different alphabet in their L1, on how much they are exposed to English outside the classroom, and on how many hours of English they get a week. The publishers have to make it very clear to governments that each book is aimed at a specific level of English so a book could be used over two or even three academic years depending on how fast the students can be expected to learn. This would actually be cheaper for governments as they would not need to buy so many copies.
5. Lessons that do not require materials are more suitable than lessons that do

Lessons need to be designed in such a way that more priority is given to the kind of activities that appear in books like *Lessons From Nothing*. Also, teachers need to be shown how to exploit texts to the maximum, using activities such as back and forth translation or Mario Rinvoluci’s Silent Sentence activity.

6. Teachers do not have cassette players or photocopiers

The teacher's book needs to give practical instructions on how to teach pronunciation and listening without a cassette player (supplementary books contain a great many of these activities), and also how to use scrap paper and cardboard to make teaching games and other materials which teachers in richer countries would probably use photocopies for.

7. Most classes are very large and crowded

The teacher's book needs to include extensive classroom management suggestions, including alternative ways of organising activities where necessary. For example, in some classes it would not be possible to do activities which involve students changing groups as they cannot actually move. In some cases alternative activities may need to be suggested.

8. Teachers have not been trained in even the most basic teaching skills

Teachers need explicit advice on how to do things like correct students, check understanding, when to translate and when to explain vocabulary using pictures or miming.

9. Teachers do not have the confidence or skill to adapt the course book

The lesson plans given in the teacher's book need to be flexible, with alternative activities to suit different learner styles and also to take into account that students have problems with different aspects of English depending on their L1. It may seem obvious that you do not have to teach something in a course book if your students do not have a problem with it, but this is exactly the problem many teachers face: they do not feel confident enough to make pedagogical decisions like this on their own initiative but they would do it if the book told them to.

It is very important that ALL the lessons should be piloted in the kind of conditions that the book will be used in as most teachers will not have the skill to adapt it if there are any problems. Basically, the publishers need to be absolutely sure that every single activity and lesson plan works before the book goes into circulation.

10. Many teachers do not master the language they are supposed to be teaching

Obviously no one can expect a teacher's book to help teachers with only elementary English to totally master the language and writers do try to give pronunciation and language help to non-native teachers. However, I would like them to be more aware
of the actual level of the teacher's English. So the teacher's book needs to include not only a guide to the target structure (which needs to be more than a simple overview), but also an extensive glossary and a very thorough pronunciation guide.

Conclusion

As you will have noticed, almost all of the suggestions concern the teacher's book. Traditionally, course book writers have written a student book, which contains the course, and then a teacher's book is written, sometimes by someone completely different, as a guide on how to use the student book. It is not surprising, therefore, that they are often seen as an optional “extra” and are often not used. We are suggesting that the teacher's book should be the main focus for the writers and should contain all the necessary information to teach the course. The student book should simply consist of any texts and exercises to be used in class which would take too long to copy off the board, plus a lot of extra exercises or texts that students can do for homework.

The old idea of what a teacher's book is, that is to say, a guide to the student book, needs to be completely revised. Teachers in developing countries need a book that contains not only the course and the lesson plans, but also supplementary activities, and which can be used as a teaching manual and a language guide.

The obvious question is if teachers need to be trained in basic skills and improve their English, why aren't the trainers doing that? Why should it be the concern of course book designers? It is true that governments need to take steps to improve teaching standards. However, there is no point designing a course book for developing countries that ignores the reality that is happening on the ground, and that is that the course would be taught by teachers who are untrained or poorly trained, have little English, teach with no resources and are physically and professionally isolated. Publishers need to start working with people who have hands-on experience.

Of course a book like this would be extremely difficult for publishers to have written, but with current text book design it is the students and the teachers who are having their work made extremely difficult.

Education is essential to pull countries out of poverty. This has been recognised in the millennium development goals which call for universal primary education by 2015. However, effective learning will not be achieved unless teachers and students have access to materials that cater to the reality in which they live.
Workshop 4: Design of learning materials

Reference material

Go for English by Kenneth Gripwell et al., MacMillan
The New Cambridge Englisch Course by Michael Swan, Catherine Walter, CUP
Keep Talking by Friederike Klippel, Cambridge Handbooks for language teachers
Lessons from Nothing by Bruce Marsland, CUP
Index Card Games for ESL by Raymond C. Clark, Pro Lingua Associates
Grammar Games by Mario Rinvoluci, CUP

I would appreciate any comments of suggestions you have, especially from teachers or trainers working in other developing countries. email: raked@wanadoo.mg
What Lithuanian Pupils Learn about Disability: Analysis of Attitudes and Content of Textbooks
Jonas Ruškus and Rasa Pocevičienė

Introduction

The representation of disability in textbooks is often a subject of research. The form and content of representation of disability in textbooks can refer to the latent subjects of educational curriculum. If, according to Schubert (1989), curriculum is conveying and interiorization of cultural values and relations of a society, representation of disability in textbooks shows not only what and how something is conveyed to students, but at the same time the meanings of disability introduced by the authors of textbooks in their turn shape behavioural models with the disabled. From this perspective, textbooks are treated as an aid of social and cultural reproduction and a definition of social diversity (McKinney, 2005). In other words, textbook content analysis can disclose a reproduced collective understanding of disability at school. Brantlinger (2004) points out, “how textbook content is based on (and reinforces) the medical model of disability that posits deficiencies in classified children [...] text narratives conveyed that schools are neutral and “kids with disabilities” are the problem”. Nansy’s (2001) research shows, that representation in textbooks mirrored representations of disability in the wider culture: “They directed readers towards a negative view of disability through false dichotomies that universalize, totalize, make static and inferiorize [...] Despite the promise of a climate that values diversity, the hegemonic negativity of disability as a singular embodiment of Other was not resisted”.

In this research school curriculum is evaluated from the perspective of integrated education of children with special educational needs (SEN). Changes in curriculum are happening in two directions. Firstly, in terms of concrete organizational activities, the school should be ready to admit children with different disorders and integrate them into mainstream classrooms. This means that it is necessary to be prepared to design modified and adapted programmes for these children, to realize principles of individualization and differentiation of the teaching/learning process. Secondly, changes are necessary not only in the technological, but also in the ideological, i.e. collective consciousness area. The concept of collective consciousness refers to people’s beliefs, attitudes, myths and stereotypes, which in one way or another influence concrete daily activities (Abris, 1994; Deschamps, Beauvois, 1996). The two forms of curriculum - one formal, documented, the other - informal, conceived, cultural, are investigated in this research.

The following questions have been posed: do school textbooks in Lithuania promote tolerance towards children with different disorders; do they teach them construing positive relations, co-operation, inclusion of students with special educational needs
into different forms of social participation at school? What are the means of integrating information about different children in textbooks; what information is given and what are the means of its representation; what kind of message about such children is sent to students? What is the real discourse – that of participation or of exclusion – formed by the textbooks? What is the intentional learning curriculum of children with special needs, i.e. how do the participants of curriculum – teachers and students – describe it?

The aim of this paper is to reveal how stereotyped representations of disability are manifested in school curriculum through the textbook content and the attitudes of participants of education. In carrying out the content analysis, texts and pictures of textbooks were analyzed. 27 Lithuanian language and literature textbooks and 9 Ethics textbooks for Years 1 to 10 were examined, in total 36 textbooks. The same content analysis of oral and written opinions of teachers and students was performed. Semi-open, oral, individual and group interviews among 70 teachers from two districts were conducted. Additionally, the same type of group interviews and discussions were conducted with 231 students from 45 schools.

Research Results

Text Content Analysis

Textbook content often contributes to the formation of negative stereotypes about disability by attributing negative features to children with special needs. Pessimistic social and educational roles of children with special needs are implied.

A very clear stereotype, which is found in the textbooks, is the negative stereotype of the person with a mental disorder. The behaviour of such a person is presented as inadequate, inappropriate to common norms; the strangeness of behaviour is emphasized, e.g., what a stupid girl – when she cooks pancakes she mixes starch with butter.

Another very frequent stereotype presented in the textbooks is a preconceived opinion about the lack of possibilities of people with mental disorders to take part in community life and education. For example, only a stupid person could fall into a trap. She is blind from birth, so she doesn’t know what yellow or green looks like. She doesn’t know what colour is at all.

The definition of disability in the textbooks is neutral and informative. However, in the texts this informational, cognitive definition is accompanied by an indirect feeling of misfortune, especially when acquired disabilities are discussed. For example, in hospital he was diagnosed with an inflammation of the brain. It is possible to treat, but he will be mentally disabled for the rest of his life. When inherent disabilities are discussed, the semantics is somewhat different, but the pessimistic mood remains, for example, He was born such. He doesn’t know why. And nobody knows.
There are some texts, fewer than those described above, where the disabled person is recognised, as being disabled, and where support for the disabled is emphasized, where people are encouraged to care about disabled people, and to include disabled persons in different forms of social participation, for example, *Please behave with us, as friendly, as you do with others. Please include us in your life, too.*

There are quite a few texts where disability is presented as a difference, a peculiarity; where disabled people are labelled, stigmatised and ridiculed, for example …*but he stutters so terribly, ha- ha, – said the boy. – What could we do together?*

There are texts, where irresponsibility is almost consciously evoked. It means that we are not responsible for caring about disabled people. These texts indirectly indicate to the readers not to care about a disabled person, not to pay attention to his/her needs and opportunities, e.g., *she has a mental disorder, that is why her other sisters mistreated her and called her a fool.*

In some texts the feelings and experiences linked with disability are presented. There is an appeal to the reader’s feelings with respect to a disabled person. The reader is invited to empathise with the disabled, for example, *I am not an empty place or a rare animal in the zoo. Why do so many people notice my body, but nobody sees ME?*

In other texts aspirations of disabled people to be active are presented. The message sent to the reader is, as follows: disabled people can and would like to make their contribution to society. For example, *The optimism came step by step, the wish to enjoy life, too; she again began to communicate with other people.*

Analysis of categories, according to the frequency in textbooks of different years, has shown that such semantic category of disability, as strange behaviour, as a consequence of a mental disability is the most frequently encountered category in the textbooks. It is found in textbooks of all years, but most often in the textbooks of Year 6. Inadequate (bad, ignorant) behaviour because of a mental disorder – this category takes 2nd–3rd place in our rating – is very often presented in the textbooks of Year 6 and 7. Making a fool of somebody, calling in anger somebody disabled – this category also takes 2nd–3rd place in our rating – this category is most frequently presented in the textbooks of Year 6. A mental disorder, as a cause of poor opportunities (4th place in the ratings scale) is more often found in Year 4 to Year 7. Decrease of the person’s possibilities because of the disability (the 4th place in the ratings scale) is more often found from Year 5 to Year 7. It is obvious that the presentation of disability in the investigated textbooks is very negative; unconsciously pupils are ascribed to the category of disabled people because of the difference in their personality and behaviour and because of no prospects for their educational and social participation. It is important to mention that in Year 6 that negative stereotypes of disability are being instilled in the most intensive way.
There are only a few texts in the analyzed textbooks where positive attitudes towards disability are presented. Positive semantic categories, such as mutual help among disabled people; offering (trying) to stand in the shoes of a disabled person, aiming at compensating disability are presented only a few times during the 10 years of schooling.

The greatest differences in stereotypes are in those semantic categories where disability is described negatively. The most negative stereotypes are presented in the Lithuanian language textbooks. In these textbooks mental disability is identified, as a reason for weak social and educational opportunities. This semantic category is the one, which mostly distinguishes Lithuanian language and Ethics textbooks. In the Lithuanian language textbooks, the inadequate (bad, ignorant) behaviour because of mental disability, disability as punishment, decreasing expectations for activity of a disabled person and the inadequate attitude of a disabled person towards him/herself are mostly emphasized.

Mystical and mythological stereotypes of disability are more often presented in Lithuanian language textbooks than in Ethics textbooks. In the first group of textbooks, disabled people are presented in tales, in the other group information about famous disabled people is given. In both cases, it is not usual, traditional and normal situations that are described, but rather more exceptional, and a special context of disability is given.

The Ethics textbooks are more oriented towards positive stereotypes of disability than Lithuanian language textbooks. Inclusion of disabled people in activities at the initiative of non-disabled people, recognition of a disabled person as s/he is, rights of disabled people guaranteed by the law (are not at all presented in Lithuanian language textbooks), teaching that it is bad to ridicule a disabled person, mutual help among disabled people, offering (trying) to stand in the shoes of a disabled person (are not at all presented in the Lithuanian language textbooks), care about disabled people – these categories are emphasized in the Ethics textbooks.

However, negative stereotypes of disability are also not avoided in the Ethics textbooks. In these textbooks, even more than in the Lithuanian language, the descriptions of strange behaviour of mentally disabled people can be found. A similar frequency of such categories, as a decrease of a person’s possibilities because of disability, disability as a stigma, a burden, making a fool of somebody, in anger calling somebody disabled, inadequate (bad, ignorant) behaviour because of the mental disorder, are presented in both Lithuanian language and Ethics textbooks.

Most often negative stereotypes of disability are presented in the textbooks of Lithuanian authors. A mental disorder is a reason for poor opportunities, strange behaviour as a consequence of a mental disorder, inadequate (bad, ignorant) behaviour because of a mental disorder, making a fool of somebody, in anger calling somebody disabled, reduced opportunities because of the person’s disability, ridicule of disabled people, disability as a punishment, a decrease of expectations for
activities of a disabled person (mental disorders) – all these are the negative images of disability, which are clearly evident in the textbooks of Lithuanian authors.

Negative stereotypes of disability could also be found in the textbooks of foreign authors, but, of course, much fewer. There are much more positive images of disability in the texts of foreign authors, than in the texts of Lithuanian authors. As an example, we could give such semantic categories, which are characteristic for foreign authors: inclusion of disabled people in activities at the initiative of non-disabled people, offering (trying) to stand in the shoes of a disabled person, rights of disabled people guaranteed by the law.

In the texts of Lithuanian authors, disability is presented, as a reason for poor opportunities, making a fool of somebody, and in anger calling somebody disabled. In these texts disabled people are often described, as unhappy people who have very high aspirations to change the state of their disability, to no longer have a disability. In other words, the negative moment of disability, the description of disability, as evil is emphasized here. In the texts of foreign authors, more than in those of Lithuanian authors, an attempt at care for a disabled person is shown. The semantics of presentation of a disability in the texts of Lithuanian and foreign authors is essentially the same; only a slight tendency to give a more negative, strange image of a disabled person in the texts of Lithuanian authors can be mentioned.

Analysis of the content of pictures

A visually impaired person (a child or an adult) is most often presented in the pictures. They show such a person together with other people. People with other kinds of disabilities are very rarely presented. A visually impaired person together with other people is more often presented in the Lithuanian language textbooks, but not in Ethics textbooks. It is interesting to note that the textbooks of Lithuanian authors present an image of an active child with visual disorders together with other people, while a visually impaired adult is passive.

Thus, the pictures in the textbooks, contrary to the texts, form a positive image of a disabled person. Other semantic categories of pictures were rarely found. Pictures with disabled people in them are most often found in primary school textbooks and in those for Year 5 and Year 6.

Data of a semi-standard survey of teachers

Data of a semi-standard survey of teachers was processed by using the content analysis method. Lexical-semantic units were grouped into semantic categories. Semantic categories show the informal, hidden components of the curriculum. Teachers, more than other groups, emphasized that a child with special needs is an equal member of the class and school community: He is the same, as other class members. Usually these children are not very different from the others. These answers and tendencies point out that integrated education of children with special needs is understood, as a value and practical reality. On the other hand, as soon as
reality of integration is considered, a great scepticism, pessimism and tendencies of segregation are strongly evident. In the 2nd and 3rd place of the rating scale of categories we can find such categories, as “to teach children with special needs is a teacher’s obligation and the children themselves are a burden” (teachers said: *it is a big burden for a teacher and a minimum profit for the child*), “the segregation of children with special needs in the common activities of the class and school” (teachers said: *the best we can do in this case is to leave such a child in peace in upper high school*), “the aim is to remove and segregate a child with special needs from the class” (teachers said: *we should teach them in special classes. Such children should feel better among others like themselves. It is necessary to teach them in special schools*). The learning programmes are suitable to their abilities; while designing a learning programme I am planning what the pupil would be able to learn with all pupils and also the variants of other tasks; I am adapting textbooks and curriculum to their possibilities – such are the thoughts of teachers. These propositions belong to the category “learning programmes, as an educational resource for pupils with special educational needs”. This category emphasizes the idea that one of the most important elements of a curriculum is well designed learning programmes, appropriate to the educational needs of children. An emotional-relational aspect of educating children with special needs is very strongly expressed in the structure of teachers’ attitudes. Categories of curriculum “Emotional disposition for working with SEN pupils and giving time to this” and “Close co-operation with colleagues, specialists, institutions of pedagogical-psychological service” show that it is important to regulate emotions and relations if we are looking for a positive aspect of quality of education: *I understood that it would be necessary to give more attention to him, as a human being, and to more accurately observe his progress*. Competencies of regulating emotions and relations became one of the preconditions of quality of education. Pedagogical pessimism is expressed in the structure of teachers’ attitudes. Teachers do not believe in educational abilities of pupils, depreciate them, do not see any inner resources of the child; *the work is usually futile. They are not able to say anything. They absolutely can’t work independently. They are not even able to copy from a book*. Such tendencies are more evident in the responses of teachers from basic schools in the country.

**Data of a semi-standard survey of pupils**

As well as teachers, pupils were questioned with the aim of finding out about their images of disability, their experience in communicating with disabled people and SEN children, and projections of their behaviour. In this research the images of pupils were treated, as the reflection and result of their curriculum (in pupil’s consciousness). In essence, pupils’ images about disability and communication experience are very positive. Children told about their experiences of friendship with disabled people (*I made friends with my neighbour; I call him; we often go for walks; it is interesting and fun to be with him*). They are projecting helpful and good behaviour with them (*I will not leave my friend in need; they need our help, because*
Caught in the Web or lost in the Textbook 453

their life is not the best). From conversations with pupils it is clear that teachers play a special role in this case. Pupils give them the functions of mediation. They need explanation and advice, they observe teachers’ behaviour and create their own models of action (Quite often nobody talks about this. The teachers and the pupils are afraid to talk).

Discussion

Information about disabled people and SEN children conveyed to students at school is essentially negative. Textbook texts are often discriminating. They don’t develop students’ tolerance and understanding of disabled people and SEN children. The problem is more serious because the writings of Lithuanian authors are more negatively stereotyped towards disabled people and SEN children, than those of foreign authors. In other words, it is obvious that the authors of Lithuanian textbooks are not sufficiently aware, not only about the problems of discrimination of disabled people, but the hidden (indirect, latent) educational meanings of the given information. In Lithuania today there are no regulations of latent learning content. It seems that the authors of the textbooks understand only one, i.e. direct, open educational side of the text, while not enough attention is paid to the indirect essence of the text. Because of this, negative information about disabled people can be contained in the texts. In the textbooks disabled people are presented, as behaving in a strange way, looking different, they are being ridiculed and on the whole bad features are ascribed to them.

Tolerance could and probably should be taught, as a separate school subject in Lithuania today (for example, a program for development of tolerance), but it is also obvious that tolerance towards different people and respect for human beings could be developed consistently through the existing school curriculum. In the Lithuanian language and literature textbooks and the Ethics textbooks, the disabled person is seldom presented, as an active and equal member of society. It is noted that more often such a person is excluded from joint activities and ascribed some negative features. In the pictures, which also send a message about disabled people, almost all of them are presented with visual disorders. In our society many people have visual disorders; glasses are not an element of exception, but more a generality. People wearing glasses are presented in standard social situations. People with other disorders are very rarely presented in the pictures. Thus, the pictures do not perform an educational function of tolerance, social and educational participation of disabled people. Research results evidently show that the authors of the textbooks do not realise enough the hidden content of texts in the textbooks. Tolerance of other people in the process of textbook writing should be organized and purposeful, and only sometimes left to the authors’ will.

The role of the teacher, as an educational mediator between the meaning (semantics) of disability and the student (the receiver of the meaning) is also very important. In this case it is not only the teachers’ professional competence in teaching a subject that is important, their attitudes towards disability, i.e. how teachers themselves treat
disability, special needs, how they evaluate such a person’s (disabled and SEN children’s) perspectives for social and educational participation, which are also of great importance. It is evident that if the teacher has a negative image of disability, the same information is given to the students. Even more so, this information will have a stronger negative character. If a teacher has a positive image of disability and SEN children, the negative information of the textbooks could be oriented in a more positive way. In this case, pupils will have a positive understanding about disabled and SEN children and their participation. The research has shown that teachers’ attitudes towards disabled people are different. They recognize the integration of disabled and SEN children into mainstream schools. On the other hand, teachers’ negative, discriminating attitudes are also very evident. The work with SEN children is viewed as an obligation, a burden; there is a wish to separate such children from the others; teachers have quite a lot of arguments for separation. Nevertheless, teachers are looking for resources, which could facilitate the integrated education of SEN children, such as co-operation with other specialists, individualized curricula, attention and time for the child.

Students construct their own discourse of disability. It was interesting to discover that students’ discourse of disability and SEN children is different from the quite negative discourse of the textbooks and teachers. Students are construing a positive discourse of disability: they actualized the positive experience of communication, friendship, joint leisure activities with disabled people and SEN children; they notice educational possibilities for such children. According to the research results, the inadequacy between mediators of the meanings of disability (the content of textbooks and teachers’ consciousness) and receivers (the content of students’ consciousness) could be explained this way: students have construed their own opinion, their own subjective discourse not on the basis of official materials of meanings (textbook content and teachers’ explanations), but on the basis of their own individual experience. An educational problem is that most often students’ positive experience is not stimulated by official materials (textbook content) and authority (teachers’ opinion).

On the basis of the research results, the authors have recommended to the Ministry of Education and Science and to other responsible institutions to design methodological recommendations for the authors of textbooks. Recommendations should mention exactly how (with what frequency, what kind of disorders, in what situations) disabled people should be presented in textbooks. We also recommend to carry out research into different experiences of European countries; their experience should be evaluated, their textbooks analyzed, the opinion of experts of social integration should be sought. Such investigation would help to prepare detailed and clear methodological recommendations, not only for the authors of textbooks, but also for teachers. They should receive recommendations how to explain and discuss the texts with students. Such methodological recommendations would help in forming a positive discourse of disability at school. This in turn would contribute to a better realization of the principles of “school for everybody”, and towards achieving real inclusion of SEN children at school.
References


Comparing Different Types of Expenditure on Teaching and Learning Materials: An emerging project

Mike Horsley

Introduction

This paper will compare national and international spending on teaching and learning materials, focusing on comparing expenditure on textbooks and Information and Communication Technologies (ICT). It is part of a wider project to develop benchmarks for resourcing teaching and learning.

Generally there is little data on spending and investment in textbooks and ICT. OECD data, for example, shows that costs and spending attributed to instruction and school materials are aggregated, making international and national comparisons problematic. As well, it has not been possible to compare spending on textbooks and newer ICT investments. Since it has not been possible to compare such investments it has been difficult to evaluate the effectiveness of spending on different ways of supporting teaching and learning. This paper will present new data on national spending on textbooks and on national and international investment on ICT. The data will be used to make preliminary evaluations of the different types of educational spending that support teaching and learning in classrooms.

Background

Recent trends in school management have featured a devolution of decision making in school budgeting and the introduction of global school budgets. However, schools face multiple and increasing financial demands, mostly mandated by government. As a result there is diminished disposable income to spend on teaching and learning resources for the classroom and to support learning. In the UK for example, the publishers association has produced a guide to Recommended Spending on Books in Schools to overcome this problem, but the methodology developed to provide the recommended quantum of spending is comparative benchmarking because no data has been developed that links spending on teaching and learning materials to learning outcomes. In US, the national textbook surveys (completed by the state of Indiana) has also revealed comparative benchmarking data on Government spending on textbooks and associated teaching and learning materials in schools.

Expenditure and Achievement

Previous research on key factors influencing student outcomes has focused on teacher quality and socioeconomic (SES) student characteristics (Rowe, 2003). More recent analysis of the performance of students on the Third International Mathematics and Science Study (in the US) analysed curriculum and school
textbooks as factors in explaining student performance (Schmidt, McKnight, Raizen, 1997; Stigler, Gallimore, Heibert, 2000). Earlier research in the third world showed that investment in teaching and learning materials had significant impact on student outcomes (Heynemann, 1980). In the context of diminishing discretionary financial resources in schools, and the challenges for school investment decision in teaching and learning resources that technology presents, there is a need to conduct systematic research investigating the level and pattern of spending on teaching and learning resources and their impact on student outcomes.

Preliminary studies on the adequacy and equity of school resources in the United States (National Research Council, 2001) have shown that current inequitable investment patterns and levels in resourcing schools are major factors in the decision making processes and the culture of decision making processes within schools. As well, a number of studies have shown that the reallocation of resources within and between schools can have significant impacts on student achievement (Miles and Darling-Hammond, 1998). This paper develops three key hypotheses on the relationship between different types of expenditure on teaching and learning resources and student achievement. It then examines these hypothesis by using data generated from research in Australia and internationally.

**Hypothesis One**

*The impact of falling real sales of teaching and learning materials overall will be magnified in low socioeconomic government schools; leading to a marked increase in inequity in access to teaching and learning materials that impact on student achievement.*

Studies on equity in the provision of access to teaching and learning materials in private and government schools in NSW in the 1990’s showed students had access to six times the teaching and learning resources in many private schools than in Government schools. Furthermore these studies demonstrated that differential access to teaching and learning materials constricted teachers’ choice of teaching and learning strategies, and could explain student learning achievement (Laws and Horsley, 1992). In addition this differential and inequitable access had implications for setting homework, classroom management, academic engaged time and the provision of appropriate teaching and learning resources for students in Government schools. We know from limited studies of sales data from Australian educational publishers (Horsley, 2004) of total expenditures on textbooks, teaching and learning materials by Australian schools that the real value of educational materials purchased by the entire school sector is falling. These expenditures are closely linked to curriculum change rather than attempts to improve access to teaching and learning resources. It is hypothesised that this fall in the availability of teaching and learning materials is magnified in Government schools thus increasing previous inequity. Earlier studies showed that teachers and schools denied access to teaching and learning materials developed a culture of low expectations and making do with

**Linking learning outcomes to spending on teaching and learning materials:**
**Preliminary Findings**

A research project has been commenced with a preliminary study of student achievement and per capita spending on teaching and learning materials identified in annual publicly available school reports. The following table provides an overview of the research methodology that will allow for the first time such direct links to be made.

**Table 1. Primary school comparisons:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>School A City Poor Multicultural</th>
<th>School B Wealthy City</th>
<th>School C Poor Rural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size in Students</td>
<td>725</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per student spending on Teaching and Learning materials</td>
<td>$180</td>
<td>$517</td>
<td>$409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of global budget funds spent</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>150%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of total budget spent</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literacy Basic Skills Test Results</td>
<td>47% top 3 bands</td>
<td>90% top 3 bands</td>
<td>30% top 3 bands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 3</td>
<td>77%</td>
<td>98%</td>
<td>86%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Australian Educational Publishing Sales Data**

The following tables show key features of the Australian educational publishing industry. Australia has about 220 educational publishers and in 2004 these publishers sold about $140 million AUD of textbooks and teaching and learning materials. Spending per student in real terms has been falling as teachers and schools change the way that they resource and support teaching and learning for students, and as a result of reduced government funding for teaching and learning support. The table shows nominal prices and costs.

**Table 2. Secondary Textbook and Teaching Resources Sales, Enrolments and Spending per student in Australia 2002-4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Year 2004</th>
<th>Year 2003</th>
<th>Year 2002</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secondary (SEC) enrol</td>
<td>1 400 173</td>
<td>1 389 450</td>
<td>1 370 403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>78 232 430</td>
<td>76 882 585</td>
<td>74 109 399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av. sales per student</td>
<td>55.87</td>
<td>55.33</td>
<td>54.07</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 3. Primary Textbook and Teaching Resources Sales, Enrolments and Spending per student in Australia 2002-1999

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary (PRI) enrol</td>
<td>1 931 346</td>
<td>1 912 541</td>
<td>1 903 881</td>
<td>1 885 358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sales</td>
<td>58 312 450</td>
<td>55 975 271</td>
<td>56 422 55</td>
<td>59 029 744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av. sales per student</td>
<td>30.19</td>
<td>29.26</td>
<td>29.63</td>
<td>31.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hypothesis Two

Spending on computer technologies is crowding out funding of other teaching and learning materials.

Currently Government, educational systems and schools are investing heavily in computer technology (Information and Communication Technology: ICT). However, there is a considerable literature (NSW Audit Office, 1999; Western Australia Audit Office, 2003) on the limited use by teachers, of technology in their teaching. Despite the unprecedented level of investment in technology, technology education and the professional development of teachers, evidence on the actual level and scale of integration of ICT and embedding of ICT into teaching and learning has been problematic. A major OECD study (2004) of technology use in schools in fourteen countries found that despite significant investment in computers and professional development, use of computers in the classroom is limited and disappointing. Computer expenditures are not supporting teaching and learning. A study by the NSW Audit Office (1999) reported that although hundreds of millions of dollars had been spent on equipping schools with technology, very few teachers used technology in their teaching and learning. Teachers and students used technology, especially for research, but technology plays only a minor role in supporting teaching and learning within classrooms.

Cuban and others (2001) have forcefully claimed that the reason for the failure of schools to take up the technology challenge is that technology in the curriculum ignores the real information needs of learners. In particular, they argue that unquestioning acceptance of new technologies that influence school outcomes and pedagogy is both foolish and dangerous.

It may be tempting to imagine that technology, especially the internet, is revolutionising teaching and learning, changing teaching practice and student learning, and allowing students to improve their learning outcomes. However, the picture emerging from research studies contradicts some of the claims made for educational use of technology and the internet (OECD, 2004). Limited sales figures by schools for information and communication software is further evidence that schools are not using investments in computer technology to support teaching and learning in the classroom. A number of studies by Twining (2002) have raised the issue of increased investment in computer technology crowding out spending in other more, immediate, practical and appropriate teaching and learning resources.
ICT expenditure has entered school costing and funding arrangements in a different way to textbooks and other teaching learning materials. Although ICT spending has not been isolated in school budgets in the past increasingly schools need to make separate allocations due to accountability measures for funding agencies and to predict future investment as the rapid depreciation of hardware and software creates pressures for continual increases in spending. Although calculated as non-salary costs, ICT spending also generates considerable professional development and specialised teaching expenditures.

Despite the tidal wave of investment in education few studies have sought to quantify the costs of ICT in education and subject these costs to the effectiveness and efficiency and cost benefits of other forms of educational spending.

Twining (2002 ICT in Schools: measuring the level of investment) noted that the UK government had spent 1.6 billion pounds between 1985 and 2001 on ICT in primary and secondary schools and recurrent expenditure was in the order of 400 million pounds per year 2000-2003. Twining compared such investments internationally. Between 1995 and 2000 the US Federal Government spent 8 Billion US dollars on supporting ICT in education. Twining’s research showed that many countries spent more than the UK and US on technology and ICT in primary and secondary schools.

In 1999 The NSW Auditor General conducted a performance review of the Computers in Schools Policy of the NSW Government. The report noted that expenditure on the Computers in Schools Program (for public schools) in its first four years was $170.6m, and the budget for the Program in 1999-2000 is $92.8m. Expenditure by the NSW Government on school education in 1999-2000 will be approximately $4 billion. In 1999-2000, the Program as a proportion of overall spending on public schools will be more than 2% (1999, Audit Report). The major thrust of the report was that although the program provided funds for hardware, software and professional development – little ICT use in teaching and learning was observed in the case based methodology used in the performance management investigation.

Furthermore, current explorations of investment and spending on ICT in education is revealing costs around 150 000 to 300 000 per annum in a non–government secondary school approaching 1000 students. Purchasing and replacing a computer for one in five students is a significant opportunity cost.

Schools are facing continuing growth in capital and recurrent expenditure related to ICT. Data developed in Australia show that for a school of 1000 students, with a computer to student ratio 1:5, this will require 400 computers with replacement cycle of five years necessitating the replacement of 80 computers per year.
Hypothesis Three

Photocopying increasingly provides teaching and learning resources as a result of cost shifting processes within school budgets.

It is often not recognised that teachers, librarians, head teachers and senior teachers such as principals, select teaching and learning resources that are used by students in classes. Indeed the planning of instruction and location of suitable resources are one of the main functions of teachers. Due to the way that schools allocate funds and manage budgets, much of this teaching and learning material constitute photocopied pages – often of low reading quality.

Each year Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) commissions an independent copyright survey in 120 schools in three states in Australia. The survey is representative of urban and rural, private and government schools and is conducted throughout the entire year. In 2001 the survey showed that on average 243 pages per secondary student and 203 pages for primary students were copied each year mostly from textbooks. These records are used to assign the funds that are collected by CAL to the authors and publishers of the photocopied works ($16 million AUD in 2002). There is some evidence that the CAL surveys under-represent the amount of photocopying conducted in Australia’s 10,000 schools. Studies undertaken by Horsley (1994, 2002), showed that typically teachers copy 2 pages per student per lesson. Nevertheless the photocopying data collected by CAL provide a rich source of data on the selection and use of resources in teaching and learning.

The photocopying data showed that for the most copied 50 titles, the majority were primary titles. This reflected the situation existing in NSW where primary Government and Non-Government schools are not allocated funds specifically for teaching and learning materials. The majority of the copying of these titles was class sets of photocopied pages. The class sets were mostly activities and tasks for lessons, and possibly for homework. Much photocopying was undertaken due to resource constraints. In the absence of investment in teaching and learning materials teachers felt that they needed to photocopy vast numbers of pages for their students – often more expensive than purchasing entire book titles or teaching and learning kits. However, photocopying usually is provided by the entire school global budget whereas investment in other teaching learning materials is sourced from very limited Faculty budgets and stage budgets. Thus the resource allocation process within school contributes to the development of low quality and ineffective resources. More needs to be understood about how within school budgeting processes influence the type of teaching and learning resources (and thus their impact on learning). Photocopying increasingly provides teaching and learning resources (often of low quality) as a result of cost shifting processes within school budgets.

Comparing ICT to other forms of spending

It is possible to make some rough and ready calculations between ICT spending and spending on other teaching and learning materials. The state of Victoria was chosen
for this comparison. Between 1994 and 2004 the Victorian Government alone spend 1 billion Australian dollars in providing ICT resources for schools, excluding professional development for teachers. This figure also excludes all spending by non-Government sources. Victoria has the highest spending on textbooks per student than any other Australian State. At the same time (1994-2004) the total sales of textbooks and other teaching and learning resources reported to the Australian Publishers Association by its member publishers amounted to $178 million Australian dollars. Expenditure on ICT in schools by the state Government alone exceeds expenditure on other forms of teaching and learning support by 5 to 1. Of particular concern is the way that recurrent and capital spending is being considered. Whereas once textbooks were seen as a recurrent expenditure, increasingly they are seen by schools and school systems as capital expenditures. At the same time whereas once ICT was seen as capital expenditure the increases in investment in ICT has come to be seen in schools, more as recurrent expenditure.

References


Information on the Economic – Social Environment as Didactic Material for Bachelor’s or Master’s Thesis

Teodoras Tamošiūnas

Introduction

Problem and relevance of the research. The relation between theory and practice is a relevant problem of scientific social research in Lithuanian universities. The number of publications in scientific literature and the Internet is increasing. Collections of researchers’ theses are rapidly expanding; their electronic storage is easily accessible. This makes it possible to more easily model theoretical theses of students more easily. On the other hand, theoretical theses of students are usually of paper type and have doubtful scientific value. Therefore the importance of collecting empirical information from the environment and scientific analysis is increasingly more accentuated to students. It is required to process empirical information by high level scientific methods, summarize it down to theoretical conclusions, and relate it to respective theoretical models and form a common conception of theory and practice.

The aim of the research is to investigate how particular information from the environment serves as didactic material for students of Šiauliai University Faculty of Social Sciences in learning to carry out scientific analysis and theoretical generalization of data in their theses.

Subject of the research is the thesis of students of Masters of Management defended in 2004 at Šiauliai University; examples of analysis of empirical data in this thesis.

The environment of the research in the Faculty of Social Sciences. Šiauliai University, Faculty of Social Sciences, is attended by approximately 3600 students undertaking bachelor’s and master’s degree study programmes in Economics and Management.

In the faculty, the cluster idea is being implemented: it is being sought that studies, science, and economic-social environment go hand in hand. The lecturers of this faculty have prepared strategic plans of Šiauliai County and Šiauliai, and the majority of them are publishing scientific articles about the economic and social situation in Šiauliai region, as well as in Lithuania. Consequently, it is obvious that students are also being engaged in regional research.

Studies are completed by writing a final Bachelor’s or Master’s work. In these works, an analysis of research results must make up the larger part of the work. The theoretical part of the work constitutes only 30 – 40 percent of all the work and has a tendency to decline. It is necessary that research data be collected from a real environment, concrete enterprises and institutions, or from the town, as well as, from the region. It is also important that research data reflect essential information about
the problem under investigation. Empirical data is being processed by statistical computer methods, and the analysis of secondary data is being carried out. Conclusions, corresponding to reality, as well as, applied recommendations are also of great importance. Novelty and practical relevance must be characteristic of research results.

Regional activity is being grounded on the idea of development: economics, society, and the environment develop together with the principal of a balanced development. In Bachelor’s and Master’s works of students, the following spheres of regional activity are being analysed: in economics – industry and small and medium enterprises, energetic, agriculture, transport, housing construction, and tourism; in society – employment, the standard and quality of life, health services, education and science, and culture; in the environment – the quality of air, water, and soil, the variety of landscape and biodiversity, natural resources, and waste disposal. Lithuanian regional policy, as well as, the irregularity of regional development is being discussed, and the comparative analysis of the main economic and social indexes of arba of ten Lithuanian counties is being carried out.

The main sources – Internet databases, Department of Statistics of the Republic of Lithuania, and the municipalities of towns and regions. Many students collect data at concrete enterprises and institutions, and investigate real economic and social problems during their practice.

Consequently, concrete social and economic information of the regions together with theoretical publications are of service to students. They serve as didactic material not only for the extraction of information but also for its processing and mastery as well as for the solution of concrete regional problems. Reading a live book of regional activity, students are accustomed to applying theoretical methods to solving practical problems, and to incorporate science, studies and economic-social environment into a single cluster.

Methods of the research. The students, in their theses, are motivated to investigate basic managerial or economical problems in their theses from their closest environment: current or future job. Thus the tasks correspond with L. Vygotsky’s Theory, Zone of Proximal Development, which suggests that it is significant for a student to analyze a relevant sphere in his studies. Otherwise, new knowledge and skills look incoherent to the student and not encouraging to be mastered.

According to the methods of Grounded theory priority is given to the analysis of empirical data: firstly empirical data is collected and analyzed and generalized into theory describing the solution of the analyzed problem. Only then the student looks for classical scientific theory and results of investigations of other authors. In the end, first and other theories are generalized into a final theory, suitable for solving the chosen problem. Thus the students are accustomed to finding the theory suitable for solving their problem independently and applying it efficiently instead of formally assimilating the indicated theory.
The widely applied method is case study – a particular practical case is analyzed, results of the investigation and student’s work environment are generalized into a theory, applicable to all similar cases.

In investigating the work environment of the student a conception of specialist-researcher is implemented – educating a specialist, who would be able to carry out scientific research in his working environment professionally.

The analysis of student research: case study

The basics of student research

The Master’s degree student Edita Minkvičienė investigated the subject “The Indicators of Gytarių Secondary School Teachers’ Qualification in the Context of the Restructuring of the Lithuanian and Šiauliu Region Educational System”. Being the deputy principal of this school she was solving the most relevant question for the School: what type of school to choose – gymnasium or general school? Many scientific research questions were raised: what criteria to follow when choosing the type of school, how to select the key criteria, how to measure conformity to the chosen criteria and how to justify that the solution is optimal?

Relevancy of the student research. In the second stage of Lithuanian education reform on 1998 the Ministry of Education and Science ratified the harmonization of the educational system as one of the top priorities. Since 1999 optimization of a network of general education schools has been taking place in Lithuania. 12-year secondary schools have been reformed to general schools for 1 – 10 forms and gymnasiums for 9 – 12 forms. However, full diagnostics of institutional status of the school, which would help the school to decide to change the status, has not yet been created.

General scientific problem. The investigations are intended to answer two main questions of school status prognosis: 1) what criteria should be followed when choosing the status of the school? 2) by what empirical indicators and how should meeting of these criteria be measured?

Aim of the student research – to investigate the indicators of Gytarių secondary school teachers’ qualifications in the context of restructuring the Lithuanian and Šiauliu region’s education system.

Object of the research – the indicators of Lithuania secondary school teachers’ qualification.

Methods of the research – an analysis of the documents.

Methodology of the research – the restructuring policy of the Lithuanian education system.
Theoretical basics of student research

In the theoretical part of the Master’s thesis the student has analyzed the theoretical basis of the reorganization of school and theories of management of strategic change.

Conception of process of reorganizing network of schools and institutional status

M. Wallace and K. Pocklington (2002, p. 3) claim that reorganization of the network of schools is only one manifestation of many changes. According to R. Stacey (1996, p. 37) change is an uncontrollable, complicated and in most cases “unfamiliar” process. M. Fullan using P. Pascale’s and R. Stacey’s conception of change, defines the change as the entirety of “forces of unknown attraction”, which creates systemic images out of chaotic states. In the process of “force of unknown attraction” the most important is the aim as searching and purifying the sense systemizes complicated phenomena. “Forces of unknown attraction” do not imply a direction of the process, but highlight the process (Fullan, 2001, p. 35).

The provided definitions of the process of change reveal one of the features of change – complexity. P. Senge when describing complexity of change has distinguished two notions:

Detailed complexity – system of all variables that can influence the issue.

Dynamic complexity – space of change, defined as entirety of causes and consequences, distant in time and with dynamically interrupting unpredicted factors. If “dynamic complexity” of changes dominates, direct intervention usually does not give the expected result (Senge, 1990, p. 365).

M. Wallace and K. Pocklington (op. cit., p. 39 – 41) when analyzing reorganization of the network of schools have distinguished five factors influencing complexity of change: large volume, activity disassembling, systemization, differentiated impact and dependence on the circumstances.

Process of reorganization from the point of view of strategic theories of change control

Balance of opposite forces is necessary for the reorganization of the network of schools. E.F. Huse and T.G. Cummings (1985, p. 73) have supplemented K. Lewin’s theory of “field of force” by the model of interaction of these forces.

Providing the model of “field of force” theory, K. Lewin has classified the sources of opposition to change into three groups: culture of organization, personal interests and individual understanding of the aims and strategies of the organization (Stoner et al., 1995, p. 408 – 409).

E. Schein has called the second stage a transformation through change of cognition. In this stage the way of seeing, evaluating and feeling the reality and reaction to new status of organization is formed. Organization members must identify themselves in the new situation and get adequate information from the environment. The third
stage “freezes”, stabilizes the achieved state for evaluation of efficiency of performed actions (Schein, 1987, p. 128). R.L. Daft (1995, p. 416) has claimed that the primary stage of change of institutional status must be the setting of need to change the status of the organization.

**The context of the restructure of the Lithuanian and Šiauliai city educational system**

The research of the student consisted of three parts: 1. Theoretical basis of the research; 2. Analysis of the environment situation (country and city); 3. Analysis of school situation and strategy of activity. When analyzing the situation of the environment of the school the student focused on the analysis of reorganization of network of schools in the country and in the city.

**The restructure of the Lithuanian educational system**

In 1998, during the second stage of the Lithuanian educational system’s reform, the Board of Education confirmed the harmonization of the educational system, as one of the most important priorities. It showed the necessity for the formation of a permanent educational system in Lithuania, which conditioned the development and improvement of the educational institutional network.

**The restructure of the Šiauliai city educational system**

The reform of the general education school network was started in Šiauliai in 2000, according to the act entitled “The establishment of the profiled education into the general education institutions third level” which states that profiled classes shall be formed in general education schools, that fulfill the requirements of the Secretary of State for Education. This document caused some changes in the general education school structure. Within the Šiauliai school network appeared some profiled schools, which planned in the future to become either gymnasium or basic school (after accreditation), and secondary schools without profiled teaching at once reorganized into basic ones.

**Teacher’s qualification – the criteria of institutional structure. The importance of qualification for the diagnostics of school type**

In the Master’s thesis the student has analyzed the influence of three criteria on choosing the type of school: the teachers’ qualification, the number of students and the educational environment. However, due to the lack of space this article is limited to the analysis of the teacher’s qualification.

In the context of reorganization of the general education school network, while diagnosing the institutional status one of the priorities is the qualification of the pedagogical staff. This is related to the organization of teachers' training, the in-service training, and the preparation of a new pedagogue competence evaluation system. The indicator for a qualified teacher was determined, as the qualification category obtained by the attestation. Thus, this indicator can be essential in meeting
the changes in the educational institution (either gymnasium or basic school) and planning its development strategies.

*Teacher's qualification characteristics in the general education schools of Lithuanian*

The Lithuanian Municipality Educational Digest statistical data of 2002-2003 and 2003-2004 year were chosen for the analysis of general education schoolteachers' qualification indicator.

General education schoolteachers' distribution according to their qualification categories in 2004-2005 is shown in figure 1.

![Figure 1. Distribution of general education school teachers, according to their qualification categories at the beginning of 2004-2005 (%)](image)

It can be noticed from this chart that the majority of Lithuanian general school teachers' have senior teacher's qualification category i.e. 56 % (having more than 4-year pedagogue's experience) are qualified specialists. Almost one-fifth (18 %) of teachers possess a methodologist's qualification category.

While diagnosing the suitability of a secondary school for the status of either basic school or gymnasium, from the teachers' occupational and subject competence perspective, the number of pedagogues, possessing high qualification categories (methodologist and expert teachers) is important. From the research of statistical data taken from the Lithuanian municipality educational digest of 2003-2004 it is evident that the number of high quality teachers (methodologist and expert teachers) varies in different general education schools (figure 2).

The data shows, that the number of high quality teachers (methodologists and experts) in different general education schools (kindergarten, primary, basic, secondary school and gymnasium) differs from 13 % to 18 %. From the data of the picture 2 it can be seen, that only in a few municipalities the number of high qualified teachers in general education schools is either as low as 3-8 % or as big as 28-33 %.
Figure 2. Distribution of Lithuanian municipalities according to the number of high quality teachers (methodologists and experts) (the data source: Lithuanian Municipality Educational Digest of 2003-2004)

The characteristics of teacher’s qualifications in Šiauliai municipality’s general education schools

In order to evaluate the qualifications of Šiauliai general education school teachers the information was taken from the digest of Šiauliai municipality statistical data for 2002-2003 and 2003-2004.

The comparison between the qualifications of Šiauliai city and State teachers showed that the results were quite similar. The concentration of teachers (possessing different qualification categories) in different types of Šiauliai city general education schools is shown in the table 1.

Table 1. The distribution of teachers possessing different qualification categories in different types of Šiauliai city general education schools at the beginning of 2004-2005 (%)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qualification category</th>
<th>Teacher</th>
<th>Senior teacher</th>
<th>Methodologist</th>
<th>Expert</th>
<th>Non-certified teacher</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In sum:</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>In sum:</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>In sum:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kindergarten</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13,3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>53,3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary school</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12,1</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>62,9</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic school</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>8,2</td>
<td>323</td>
<td>56,1</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary school</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1,7</td>
<td>490</td>
<td>51,4</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnasium</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,8</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>28,9</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Šiauliai municipality according to the number of methodologists and experts in all types of its general education schools (kindergartens, primary, basic, secondary schools and gymnasiums) belong to the type of municipalities having quite a high rate of methodologists and experts.
Characteristics of teachers' qualification in Šiauliai Gytariai secondary school

Analyzing Šiauliai Gytariai secondary school's possibilities from its teachers' qualifications point of view (in the context of optimized general education school network) scales of five scores, in which zero point is understood as an unimportant indicator, are proposed. The meaningful indicators are 1 and 2 scale meanings, which are divided in the scale into two groups. 1 and 2 score meanings are calculated according to the numbers of all categories of teachers in State's basic schools and gymnasiums.

The evaluation of Šiauliai Gytariai secondary school teachers' qualifications is given in the State's basic schools' and gymnasiums' senior teachers' scale (refer to picture 3).

![Figure 3](image.png)

Figure 3. The evaluation of Šiauliai Gytariai secondary school teachers' qualifications in the State's basic schools and gymnasiums' senior teachers' scale

It is seen from the scale that the institutional senior teacher's qualification category's meaning is close to the State's gymnasiums' senior teacher's qualification category's meaning. This meaningful indicator is bigger than two scores in the gymnasiums' indicator scale, thus it can be partially viewed as meaningful for Šiauliai Gytariai secondary school when choosing the status of a gymnasium.

When the school is choosing the status of a gymnasium the number of experts looking from statistical perspective is especially meaningful. In the scale, the institutional level is fixed outside the scale of gymnasium indicators.

Conclusions from the student research

Having carried out research on the qualitative composition of Gytariai secondary school teachers, we may state that:

1. The proportion of experts differs widely from the results of the country and region (the experts at school constitute 5%, while in the country and region – 1%).
2. More than a fifth (23%) of school teachers are not certified.
3. The dominant of the qualifying category of senior teacher prevails (47% of all school teachers).
4. The statistical value of supervisors belongs to the corresponding interval of the region (20 – 30% interval).
5. According to the proportion of high qualification teachers the school is classified as a national gymnasium where the proportion of supervisors and
experts is twice the proportion of supervisors and experts at secondary schools of the country.
6. The indicators of the statistical value of the school’s senior teacher, teacher, supervisor and expert qualifying categories fall into the scale of the corresponding categories of the gymnasiums of the country.
7. The value of the teachers without assessment is unrelated to the diagnostics of institutional status.
8. We have found the basis for the following propositions:
   – At Lithuanian comprehensive schools the number of teachers with assessment is growing; pedagogues with senior teacher qualification prevail at 56%; the number of high qualification teachers markedly differs at comprehensive schools of the country (from 3% to 38%); there are more teachers with higher qualification at gymnasiums than at secondary schools.
   – According to the proportion of high qualification teachers gymnasiums of the town fall into the group of gymnasiums of the country, where supervisors and experts constitute 43 – 48%; the proportion of high qualification teachers at secondary schools is twice the proportion of high qualification teachers at lower secondary schools; the proportion of supervisors and experts at gymnasiums is twice the proportion of supervisors and experts at secondary schools.
   – The qualification of teachers enables Gytarai secondary school to choose the type of gymnasium.

Conclusions
1. In the investigated Master’s thesis a wide analysis of country, city and school documents has been carried out, statistical methods of computer quantitative analysis have been applied and qualitative interpretation of statistical data has been carried out.
2. In the thesis analysis of empirical data dominates theoretical part, which amounts to about 20 percent.
3. The theory analyzed in the thesis indicates that restructuring of network of schools in the country is an integral part of the theory of management of strategic change.
4. The Master’s thesis meets the requirements of research methods: the student has carried out the research of the main problem in her working place and formed the basis for the solution of this problem with research results and generalizations. Thus the student has proved that she met the qualification of postgraduate level specialist – researcher of management.
5. This article was prepared based on the case study method: several aspects of one Master’s thesis were analyzed. The aim of the article was achieved – it was shown that information from the environment serves as didactic material for students’ theses.
Workshop 4: Design of learning materials

References

The digests and reports of educational activities of Lithuanian municipalities and the legislative basis of the restructuring of education system constitute the Lithuanian reference list.

**English references**


Development of textual competence during students’ work with multimodal learning material

Marie Falkesgaard Slot

Introduction

The purpose of this article is to discuss text and textual competence seen from the perspective of development of concepts for description and understanding interaction between pupils, teacher and learning materials related to development of textual competence in the subject Danish in upper secondary education. My field of research is, thereby, in between development of textual competence and learning material development. A catalogue of learning materials will investigate questions like which combinations suits different kinds of learning goals best. Theoretically the project is based on Nordic research on learning material and pedagogical texts (Selander, Skjeldbred, Wikmann, Skyum Nielsen) and research on text- and media pedagogy by English researchers (Kress, Van Leeuwen, Buckingham). The two traditions build up a double perspective on the domain of research: pedagogic questions are too be asked related to pupils processes of work and text pedagogic questions are to be asked related to concepts of texts- and media types presented in different kinds of learning materials.

A catalogue of learning materials

One agenda is the necessity to put different kinds of learning materials on the educational agenda in mother tongue agenda in Denmark and the Nordic countries. To teach multimodal texts and assign a high priority to a broad textual competence development, it is necessary to chose learning materials that facilitate these visions, that is, at a minimum to choose learning materials that facilitate multimodal textual competence development as well. The catalogue covers a wide range of competence, relevant for textual competence development in the subject of Danish; a textbook focusing on the four main areas in the subject of Danish, oral- writing- reading- and rhetoric competence, a cd-Rom focusing on textual openings based on both a linguistic and hermeneutic approach to text work but mostly training grammatical and linguistic competence. The third material is an interactive film, constructed in a way that gives the pupil possibility to develop narrative and digital competence (Tyner, 1998), and then finally I am working with a web-based learning material related to the textbook. The chosen learning materials are available designs, in the sense that I did not combine materials which are difficult to attach, or extremely hard to use.
What is a text?

What I want to discuss first are some definitions of text. Humans have always been questioning what characterises a text. The answers that have been given differ, because our text conceptions are changing through time and space. At the same rate as we indeed face a lot of new electronic texts, facilitated by new technology, we see a very fruitful recasting between new and old texts like hypertexts, intertextuality and so on. These new text types broaden our understanding of text, and also change the common understanding of textual competence. Theoreticians build up discussions about what consequence new text- and media types have for the production of new narratives (Ryan, 2004).

Selander and Skjeldbred (2004) go back to Ricœur’s essay: “What is a text”. Ricœur discusses the relation between speak and text, and concludes that texts, in one way or another, are spoken or written texts. But today it is a narrow definition, because it makes it difficult to study the boundary surface between for instance literature and media types as they occur in a wealth of new text types these days. But of course text in Ricœur’s optic in 1973 could not have been an internet web side, a computer game or an interactive narrative. Social, cultural and economic factors and new kinds of artefacts mean that we must give different answers to Ricœur’s question: What is a text? It seems that we need a flexible and broad definition. I find that in the understanding of text that Gunter Kress and Theo Van Leeuwen expose because they are aware of discussing mode and multimodality (Kress, Van Leeuwen, 2001). Nevertheless, it will be too much of an effort to refer the semiotic and sociocultural theories witch covers the foundation behind Kress and Van Leeuwen’s thinking. Therefore I will only pick out a small fragment on what is said about the concept of text. According to Kress and Van Leeuwen a text is a result of a social action and is always in a context, somebody does something in social, economic and cultural ways with texts. The discourses under which texts are constructed must therefore be analysed to see how a current text occurs:

“There is an important question of naming and definition to be dealt with around the term text. Does it refer to linguistically realised entities alone? Or only to those realised in Writing? Can it include entities which consist of image and writing? And if it can, do we then refer to the written part of the text differently than we do the visual?” (Kress and Van Leeuwen, 2001)

Understood as a broad definition, I find the statement useful, but also traditional. We have made use of definitions like this since it became clear that an “old” text concept like the one Ricoeur stands for no longer can stand alone. Most text books was earlier carried by writing – today textbooks communicate via images of different kinds and appear in multimodal forms, and it gives opportunity to broadcast new affordances and constraint’s – in schools also.

Texts in schools

Many possibilities have emerged. Electronic texts establish new forms of meaning-making processes, and researchers are talking innovatively about possibilities when
putting electronic texts on the school agenda. But in spite of the arise of for instance interactive narratives which shift the framework for literary production in schools, one becomes a bit exhausted, taking a look at formal learning contexts “in situ”. Schools do not have money to buy learning materials, they do not necessarily have the equipment, or money to buy re-education. Also, didactic questions stress out that not all texts are relevant just because they exist, and therefore it must be questioned how to work progressively with different text types in learning setting. In a critique on the concept of text Swedish professor Caroline Liberg points out the importance in discussion which types of texts can be considered as relevant in the subject of Danish. She also pinpoint the potential in pupils and teachers work with complex and dynamic text concepts because it shows realistic types of processes and products can be developed. Altogether, Liberg discusses the concept of text concept but also the possibility for development of textual competence more broadly. (Liberg, 2003) We have to consider how we want these different kinds of texts to be used, which role they should play, speaking in the terms of competence.

**Development of textual competence**

The textual competence development is a goal in the subject of Danish at every level of the educational system. You find research on the domain in all levels of the educational system, while the ground steps have been taken in the research field of primary school since the 1980’s in Denmark. Research on textual competence in upper secondary Education in Denmark is by contrast a newly established research field.

In the Nordic countries you only find one book in the field: *Textual Competence* (Hetmar, 2001). It covers a wide range of projects done by Nordic researchers in the year 2001. You find research on reading competence, text pedagogy, text linguistic competence etc. When reading this collection of suggestions of what textual competence might be in the 21’Th Century, it strikes me that these articles define text and textual competence in quite a traditional way. The development of textual competence means writing and reading letters on paper. However, to study different approaches to the development of textual competence, when the concept of text is a moving target is rare. Even though I find the definition a bit narrow, the book is a starting point in finding some kind of state of the art on the research done on the development of textual competence in the Nordic countries. I am interested in defining a broad frame discussing which kind of textual competence development in the future. We need broad terms to decide the kind of readers we do wish, and which repertoires of textual capacities citizens need within the next twenty or thirty years. In my opinion, we have to deal with text- and media types in the future, and point towards educate textual readers, who have a lot of different competences which they can activate at the same time – gathered in the term textual competence.

Colleges in Denmark and abroad have for several years done research on different kinds of competence related to the subject of Danish, and thereby an increasing
amount of knowledge about reading and writing competence or literacy is available. (Knobel and Lankshaire, 2003) Vibeke Hetmar defines textual competence:

Textual competence is at one time a designation concerning a general, cultural anchored resource and a specialization that puts the subject in a position to respond appropriately in specific textual actions / literacy events (my translation, Hetmar, 2001, 17)

Hetmar understands textual competence as reading competence and the ability to choose a reading strategy. She also argues that the development of textual competence is a development of working methods. Hetmar’s research in the 1990s also meant that literature teaching and text pedagogy gradually became a confront with a certain kind of “correct” reading, and a new inspiration to practice a subject oriented text pedagogic inspired by American reader-response theories raised. Reception became a buzz-word, and teachers talked on conferences and in classrooms about “holes in the texts” presented by Umberto Eco and “reading for plots” presented by Peter Brooks. Gun Malmgren concludes on this development:

“One of the conclusions in this Danish - Swedish cooperation has been that it is no longer interesting to play theories of competences out against theories of socialising. Our experiences from research cruces tell us that instead of going apart we have everything to win if we do cooperate. Will we be able to get more knowledge about the room of reading as Vibeke Hetmar has been studied, we are another step along the road. I memorise when Birthe Sørensen introduced the concept teacher’s text and pupil’s text to show how problematic it can be when a text is preformed in a classroom” (Malmgren, 1999).

I call on this review because the consistency of what was said experienced an enormous reaction in the Nordic way of defining textual competence. Textual competence surely became an issue, an ability that pupils already were in possession of and moreover; their readings and interpretations were taken seriously on equal terms as the teachers’ readings. Text pedagogy became a work between professionals, not considering that teachers and pupils had the same professional qualifications, but the pupil was looked upon as a recipient just as the teacher. In that way the theories of reader-response inspired a generation of teachers and researchers to focus on pupils’ development of textual competence and pointed out the importance of the parallel between textual competence and methods of works. In the late 1990s, we saw, in Denmark, a rising research field related to upper secondary education. The contribution of this work means that we have some knowledge about pupils’ and teachers’ way of thinking of competence with texts. These reflections were split into a lot of different kinds of competences; to comprehend and analyse literature, to have reading competence, to have linguistic competence. These studies form my starting point. But on the other hand, research domains, in which textual competence in the subject of Danish studied as separate units challenge my understanding of the subject of Danish and stimulate my curiosity towards finding different ways in study patterns of pupils’ learning processes and progression related to learning materials.
Textual competence in my optic

Textual competence is not a neutral, but a normative concept which actors of any part of the education system negotiate and struggle for. The discussions of textual competence are about which kind of readers we want to educate in the future, and related to the more generally discussion of competences now and in the future. It is decisive who is defining textual competence and in what contexts it is done. In my opinion textual development has to be discussed in relation related to the practices in which learning processes take place. My own position is biased as well; because I studying textual competence between pupils, teachers and learning materials, I consider my catalogue of learning material built on a bottom-up view. To study textual competence in school settings “in situ”, in different kinds of texts, with different kinds of modes and media, facilitated in different kinds of technologies, is the aim of my PhD project, because I claim that it is of major importance to look broadly at competence development in learning settings. Textual competence is the ability to comprehend and use different kinds of multimodal texts which we meet and interact with in every day life. Textual competence is the ability to read multimodality aspects into a text - like a weather forecast, interactive contests on TV, and instructional texts on hair dying products etc. When it comes to education in mother tongue, you put the concept of textual competence into a systematic work with texts. Therefore I define textual competence related to the subject of Danish as:

Textual competence in the subject of Danish is the ability to use a broad set of dynamic and changeable textual assumptions that allow one receptive and productive to glide through multimodal texts with an understanding, commitment and critical distance.

With this socio cultural definition of what it is to be competent with texts I will analyze my data and give answers to the following questions related to development of textual competence:

- What are the affordances and limits expressed in the learning material catalogue which I have constructed, when it is about students possibilities to develop textual competence in the subject of Danish?
- To what extend is it possible to bring innovative working processes related to textual competence development into the learning material catalogue?
- What specific modes in learning materials have a learning potential of a particular kind in textual competence development in the subject of Danish?

References

480 Workshop 4: Design of learning materials

List of authors

Aamotsbakken Bente  
Vestfold University College  
bente.aamotsbakken@hive.no

Askeland Norunn  
Vestfold University College  
norunn.askeland@hive.no

Aubin Paul  
Université Laval, Québec  
paubin@upec.qc.ca

Axelsson Sten Gunnar  
Municipality of Tanum (Sweden)  
Sten-Gunnar.Axelsson@tanumskolan.tanum.se

Balčiūnienė Inga  
Šiauliai university  
balciuniene.inga@gmail.com

Bliss Susan  
University of Sydney  
blisses@netspace.net.au

Bruillard Éric  
IUFM de Créteil/STEF  
eric.bruillard@creteil.ufm.fr

Cleghorn Ailie  
Concordia University  
ailie@education.concordia.ca

Collet Hélène  
IUFM/Université Rouen  
helene.collet@rouen.ufr.m.fr

Djurovic Arsen  
University of Belgrade  
arsen@ptt.yu

Engelstad Arne  
Vestfold University College  
Arne.Engelstad@hive.no

Exarhos Ioannis  
University of the Aegean  
ioannisexarhos@hotmail.com

Falkesgaard Slot Marie  
University of Southern Denmark  
marie.falkesgaard.slot@dig.sdu.dk

Foster Stuart  
Inst. of Education, University of London  
s.foster@ioe.ac.uk

Gim Chaechun  
Yeungnam University  
ccgim@yumail.ac.kr

Göransson Anna-Lena  
Swedish Rescue Services Agency  
anna-lena.goransson@srv.se

Harrie Anna Johnsson  
Linköping University  
annjo@iuv.liu.se

Haynes Anthony  
The Professional and Higher Partnership  
anthony@professionalandhigher.com

Horsley Mike  
University of Sydney  
m.horsley@edfac.usyd.edu.au

Huttova Jana  
Open Society Institute  
jhuttova@osi.hu

Julkunen Marja-Liisa  
University of Joensuu  
Marja-Liisa.Julkunen@joensuu.fi

Justin Janez  
Educational Research Institute, Ljubljana  
janez.justin@guest.arnes.si

Kahr-Højland Anne  
University of Southern Denmark  
akb@dream.dk

Kalmus Veronika  
University of Tartu  
Veronika.Kalmus@ut.ee

Knudsen Susanne V.  
Vestfold University College  
susanne.knudsen@hive.no

Kwak Byong-Sun  
Kyungin Women’s College, Incheon  
gwak@kic.ac.kr